

## tagalog

corazon salvacion castle and laurence mcgonnell

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be with **teach yourself** 

About the authors

Corazon Salvacion Castle (MA in TESL/Applied Linguistics) is an author, writer, translator and teacher of English and Tagalog at SOAS. Laurence McGonnell MA, MPS is a member of St. Joseph's Missionary Society and lives and works in the Philippines.

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 986, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 2000 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 2000 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The teach yourself name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright @ 2000, 2003 Corazon Salvacion Castle and Laurence McGonnell

In UK All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Transet Limited, Coventry, England.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Éducation, a division of Hodder Headline, an Hachette Livre UK Company, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number

15 14 13 12 11 10 2010 2009 2008 2007

## CONTENTS

Î	Introduction 1
	Pronunciation guide2
	Sa paliparan At the airport5 Introducing yourself and addressing others; Greeting people at different times of the day; Saying hello and goodbye; Language skills: Si, sina. Simple sentence construction. Formal or informal? Ka, kayo You
2	Anong oras ang almusal  What time is breakfast?17  Checking in to your hotel; Language skills: Verb 'to be';  Enquiring about meals; Language skills: May, mayroon  Has/have, there is/are; wala None (no). Question words:  Sino? ano? Who? what?
3	Para sa inyo ang regalong ito  This gift is for you  Meeting your friend's family; Language skills: The indefinite article, a and an; Ang The definite article, the; Saying 'thank you'; Language skills: Hindi No/not; Wala None
4	Nasaan ang post office?  Where's the post office?  Asking 'where?'; Language skills: Nasaan? Where?;  Buying stamps and sending a parcel; Language skills:  Adjectives
5	Pera Money  Asking the price of goods; Language skills: Isa, dalawa, tatlo, etc. One, two, three, etc. Counting money. Anong oras na? Telling the time; Magkano, magkakano How much, how much each?; Haggling; Changing currency and travellers' cheques at the bank

6	Saan ka nakatira? Where do you live?76 Using the question word saan; Language skills: Saan? Where?; Finding an address on a map; Language skills: Masyado So, very, quite, too, etc. Find the right Jeepney/bus
7	Ang pamilya ko My family89 Introducing the members of your family; Language skills: Ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila; Possessive pronouns: Ng Offof the; ni/nina + name of person/s; Using 'ay' in a sentence; Language skills: Ay
8	Sa restawran At the restaurant104 Ordering your drinks; Language skills: Mga Making words plural; Choosing some typical Filipino food; Language skills: Other uses of mga; Asking for the bill; Language skills: Ito, iyan, iyon This, that, that (over there); Mga + ito, iyan, iyon
9	Sa botika At the pharmacy119 Asking for medication; Language skills: Para sa For; Para kanino For whom; para saan for what; Consulting a doctor; Naming the parts of the body
10	Tulong? (Need) Help?132 Asking for help; Language skills: Sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya Mine, yours, his/hers; Mga kulay Colours; Shopping for a gift; Language skills: Kanino Whose; Sa To/to the, in/in the, on/on the, at/at the
11	Gusto kong magpagupit I want a haircut148 Making an appointment; Language skills: Pseudo-verbs; Describing what you want done; Language skills: More about pseudo-verbs; Language skills: More on the sa preposition
12	Bagay ba sa akin? Does this suit me?163 Trying something on in a store; Language skills: Verbs: Active voice/passive voice; Transitive/intransitive; The um verb; Asking about alterations; Language skills: Verbalisation of adjectives; Describing the weather; Language skills: Verbalisation of acts of nature

	Asking about tickets, destinations and departures; Days, months and years; Language skills: Mag verbs; Enquiring about arrivals; Language skills: Ma verbs; Finding out what your journey will be like; Language skills: Maka + um verb stem To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to; makapag + mag verbs To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to
14	Sa tabing-dagat At the beach 201 Hiring a boat; Language skills: Mang verbs; Particles; Going swimming; Language skills: Makapang To be able to
15	Sa simbahan At church218 Becoming a godparent; Language skills: In Passive verbs; Attending a baptism; Language skills: Changing the tense of in verbs; More on particles
16	Maari bang gawin mo ito?  Could I ask a favour of you?  Making requests and suggestions; Language skills:  Passive 'i' verbs; May + verb; walang + verb; Requests, commands and suggestions
17	Isang kasalan A wedding250 Understanding Filipino customs and traditions: a wedding; Language skills: Passive an verbs; Expressing the circumstantial in passive verbs; Talking about customs; Language skills: Sarili ko/aking sarili etc; Reflexive; mismo intensive
18	Sa isang pistang bayan At a town fiesta268 Celebrating a Filipino fiesta; Language skills: Pag + verb root; Nominalised verbs - the gerund; Ka + verb root + an, ang + verb; Other nominalisations; Language skills: Maki, makipag, makipang; Participational verb forms in active verbs; Handling a water buffalo!; Language skills: Ganito Like this; Ganiyan Like that; Ganoon Like that (over there)

19	Ang buhay sa baryo Life in the barrio	_287
	Living in the barrio; Language skills: Magpa + active verb To cause, to let, to have, to permit, to ask, to must Helping on the farm; Language skills: Pa-in (ma/un verb roots), papag-in (mag verb roots), papang-in (mang verb roots); Language skills: Ipa (in and i verba-an (an verbs) To cause, to let, to make, to allow, have, to permit	ake; 1 rbs),
20	Paalam Goodbye_ Expressing embarrassment; Language skills: Kasing sing As as; Doing last-minute shopping; Language skills: Making nouns with pang; Saying your last goodbyes; Language skills: Mas, lalong, kaysa sa	
	Key to the exercises	_323
	Verb list	_334
	Tagalog-English glossary	_345
	English-Tagalog glossary	_356

#### Acknowledgements

Cora expresses her gratitude to the people who made this book a reality. To Sue Hart of Hodder and Stoughton for commissioning her to write this book. To Dr Nigel Philips of the University of London for persuading her to continue with this project. And most especially to Larry, for agreeing to co-author this book, contributing valuable cultural tips, and for patiently going through the original manuscripts. Also to Rebecca Green for her infinite patience, to friends Eric, Shirley and Arnan, and to Dr Doming Landicho for his helpful advice. Her heartfelt love and gratitude also go to Roy, her husband, for his endless assistance, and her special thanks to Louie, Baby, Elian and Divin for their support.

Larry would like to express a word of thanks to Fr. Jose Leslie Andre who kindly offered advice in the preparation of some of the cultural tips in this book. Thanks also go to Nenet Penetrante for her behind the scenes assistance and to my family and colleagues at St. Joseph's College, Mill Hill, for their support. Thanks to Bert and Leting Tronosco for providing some of the photographs reproduced in this book. Finally, a word of thanks to Sue Hart and Rebecca Green at Hodder & Stoughton for their patient assistance throughout this project.

The Publishers would like to thank Roy Castle for the illustrations.

## INTRODUCTION

This *Teach Yourself Tagalog* course is intended to supply the beginner with a simple and well-selected stock of words in easy-to-understand lessons.

This book is a fascinating introduction to not only the Tagalog language, but also the Filipino way of life. Here, we will follow the day-to-day 'adventures' of the Cook family: Bill, Louise and Roy. Follow them from the minute they touch down at Ninoy Aquino International Airport, as they check in to their hotel, visit places of interest and attend local festivities while travelling around the country by bus, jeepney and boat. By following them, we will learn much about the ways and customs of the Filipino people, and of course plenty of Tagalog!

The chapters are graded in complexity and each includes a dialogue, a vocabulary box, a comprehensive grammar explanation, drills, practice tests and plenty of cultural tips. Prepare to be informed and entertained: Learn how to haggle at a Sunday market, discover your ability to mix with the locals while enjoying the pleasures of Tagalog learning. *Teach Yourself Tagalog* is a veritable treasure trove of information, activities – and learning.

The phonetic pronunciations in this book are specifically designed for native English speakers and follow standard English pronunciation. They offer the nearest possible approximation of Tagalog sounds, available to the native English speaker. For a highly polished Tagalog pronunciation, listen carefully to native Tagalog speakers.

A list of common words can be found as an appendix for your convenience and interest.

The authors want you to be able to learn Tagalog as painlessly as possible and to develop self-confidence in speaking and writing your new language. So relax and *Teach Yourself Tagalog*!

Maasim (mah-ah-seem)

# PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

The Tagalog language is relatively easy to pronounce for the English speaker. It is in fact read or pronounced as written or printed, making it almost phonetic. We can safely say that the pronunciation of Tagalog more or less rests on the five vowels:

a ah e eh i ee o aw u oo

The consonants are as follows:

b bah k kah d dah g gah h hah l lah m mah n nah ng ngah p pah r rah s sah t tah w wah y yah

The letters C, F, J, Q, V, X and Z are not strictly part of the Tagalog alphabet though they do appear in the names of people, i.e. Corazon, Josefa, Victoria; places, i.e. Quezon, Luzon, Virac, Zamboanga; and names of things, i.e., Xerox, Kleenex etc.

The letters **b**, **p** and **t** are not aspirated in Tagalog. An easy way to test whether your **b**'s, **p**'s and **t**'s are aspirated is to hold a piece of paper in front of your mouth while pronouncing each letter. The paper should not move whenever these letters are pronounced. Why not try it out? If the paper didn't move then congratulations, you have pronounced them the Tagalog way.

Every syllable in Tagalog is pronounced. Even if a word has two successive vowels, then each vowel is treated as a separate syllable and pronounced. For example, the Tagalog word **Oo** (meaning: yes) is not pronounced as 'ooh' but rather as *aw-aw*. This rule does not however apply to foreign words that have been assimilated into the Tagalog language, for example, Quezon (a personal noun of Spanish origin).

Examples:

Aa dirt; filth (used only when (ah-ah) speaking to small children about anything dirty. Also used by children themselves). (sah-ahn) Saan where Leeg (leh-ehg) neck (ee-nee-ee-wahn) being left (passive voice) Iniiwan Uuwi (00-00-wee) will go home (active voice) Biik (bee-eek) piglet Tsaa (tsah-ah) tea

The more you study and listen to Tagalog, the more foreign words (mainly Spanish and English) you will begin to notice in the vocabulary.

SOUT

#### **Examples:**

Garahe	(gah-rah-heh)	garage	(origin: Spanish)
Recibo	(reh-see-baw)	receipt	(origin: Spanish)
Kalye	(kahl-ye)	street	(origin: Spanish)
Tseke	(tseh-keh)	cheque	(origin: English)
Notbuk	(nawt-book)	notebook	(origin: English)

In Tagalog, ch is pronounced like the 'ch' in 'cheque' or 'cha cha'. There is no sh combination in Tagalog, hence the English word 'shoes' is likely to be pronounced 'syoos' and the word 'shame' becomes 'syaym'. The soft th as in 'thing' does not exist and so is pronounced as 'teeng'. The hard th as in 'that' is also absent from Tagalog and so the word is pronounced as 'daht'.

The final s is never pronounced as a z in Tagalog. Any word ending in s is therefore pronounced as an s.

The letters F, PH and V are replaced in Tagalog by P and B respectively.

#### **Examples:**

Father	pronounced	'pah-dehr'	=	pader
Philip	pronounced	'Pee-leep'	=	Pilip
Vanilla	pronounced	'bah-neel-yah'	=	banilya
Victory	pronounced	'beek-taw-ree'	=	biktori

#### B. D and G tend to be voiceless and heard as P. T and K.

When a group of consonants (non-vowels) appear at the beginning of a word, they tend to invite the softening touch of a vowel. These vowels are known as intrusive vowels. For example:

School	becomes	eskul	(es-kool)
Start	becomes	istart	(is-tart)
Scheme	becomes	iskim	(is-keem)

The endings of words can sometimes be dropped or changed, and this is most apparent in the pronunciation of words ending in **D** or **T**.

#### **Examples:**

Stand	becomes	stan	(stahn)
Trends	becomes	trens	(trehns)
Wants	becomes	wans	(wahns)
Canned	becomes	can	(kahn)

There are no WH sound in Tagalog pronunciation. The straightforward W sound replaces it.

#### **Examples:**

What	becomes	wat	(waht)
When	becomes	wen	(wehn)
Which	becomes	wits	(weets)
Why	becomes	wahy	(wigh)

Tagalog makes no regular distinction between the I in 'hit' and the I in 'heat', between the U in 'tool' and the U in 'pull'.

#### **Examples:**

Kit	becomes	keet	(keeht)
Keats	becomes	keets	(keehts
Sit	becomes	seet	(seeht)
Seat	becomes	seet	(seeht)
Rule	becomes	rool	(roohl)

Accents have been provided on all words in the Tagalog-English glossary at the back of the book to assist with a more accurate pronunciation.

## SA PALIPARAN At the airport

#### In this unit you will learn how to

- introduce yourself and address others
- greet people at different times of the day
- form simple sentences

## Introducing yourself and addressing others



The Cook family has arrived at Ninov Aguino International Airport (NAIA) in Manila. It is 7.30 in the evening. A friendly customs official approaches them.









**Opisval** Magandang gabi po sa inyo. Kumusta kayo? Si

Ginoong Santos ako. Anong pangalan ninyo?

Mabuti naman, salamat. Bill Cook ang pangalan ko. Bill

Mabuti rin naman. Maraming salamat. Louise Cook Louise ang pangalan ko.

Mabuti po naman. Salamat po. Roy Cook po ang Roy pangalan ko.

Ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala. Opisyal

To help build your confidence, we have included two simple pronunciation aids in the Unit Dialogues throughout this book. The **bold** typeface syllables in each word indicate where to add stress, while the italicised words indicate a glottal stop.



#### Talasalitaan Vocabulary magandang gabi po good evening (polite) sa inyo to you (plural) kumusta kayo how are you (polite) anong pangalan ninyo? what's your name? (formal) ang pangalan ko my name is mabuti naman fine also (lit.) maraming salamat Thank you very much ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala I'm pleased to meet you mabuti rin naman I'm fine too mabuti po naman I'm fine too (formal)

#### **Translation**

Officer Good evening to you. How are you? I'm Mr. Santos.

Bill (I'm) fine. Thank you. My name is Bill Cook.

Louise I'm fine too. Thank you very much. My name is Louise

Cook.

Roy I'm fine too. My name is Roy Cook. Thank you.

Officer I'm pleased to meet you.

Did you notice the different ways in which the official and the Cook family introduced themselves? Bill Cook simply said: 'Bill Cook ang pangalan ko', whereas Roy Cook said 'Roy Cook po ang pangalan ko.' Filipinos traditionally place a high value on respect and politeness. They often insert the word 'po' or 'opo' into a sentence as an indicator of respect, especially when addressing older people or persons in authority. It is good practice for the visitor to the Philippines to show sensitivity to this cultural value from the outset. By using the more formal 'po' or 'opo', you are assured of making a good first impression. Now try using the two different ways of introducing yourself (formal and informal). Write the sentences down, this time using your own name. Why not try recording the new sentences and listening to your own voice and pronunciation. Listen once again to Dialogue 1 and compare your Tagalog pronunciation with that of Bill Cook.

**Anong pangalan mo?** What is your name?



Did you notice how the official asked Bill Cook for his name? There are different ways in which people may ask your name. Look at the following examples and listen carefully to their pronunciation on the accompanying tape. Tagalog word sounds are quite different from English word sounds. Try to repeat what you hear as closely as you can.

Magandang umaga po.
Anong pangalan mo?
Joe Bulman.
Sino ka?
Si Phil ako.
Sino po kayo?

Good morning.
What's your name?
(I'm) Joe Bulman
Who are you?
I am Phil.
Who are you? (polit

Sino po kayo? Who are you? (polite)
Si Ginoong John Smith ako.
Sino po kayo? Who are you?

Who are you?

Si Margaret Hough ako.

I am Margaret Hough.

## Addressing others I, you, he/she etc.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
anong pangalan mo	what's your name?
pangalan mo	your name
sino	who

In our day-to-day conversations, we do not always use people's names. Sometimes we drop the names in favour of words such as I, he, she, etc. These are known as personal pronouns.

The following table shows both singular (only one person) and plural (more than one) personal pronouns.

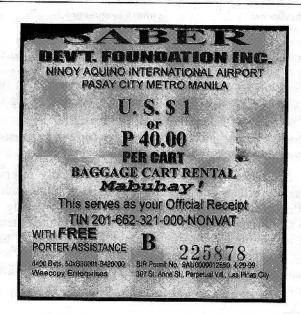
Tagalog sometimes uses the plural form (normally reserved for addressing more than one person) to address a single individual. For the Tagalog speaker, this has the same effect as using 'po' or 'opo', in that it conveys politeness and respect to the listener. For example, we would normally understand 'kumusta kayo?' to mean, 'how are you (all)?' However, when addressed to a single individual, it can be understood as a very polite way of asking how someone is.

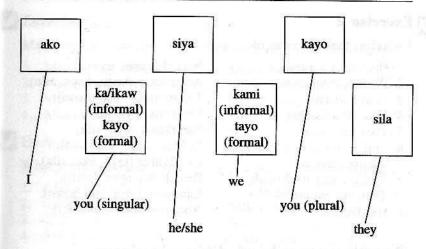
#### Airport tip

	Singular	Plural	
1st person (speaker)	ako I	kami we (excluding listener) tayo we (including listener)	
2nd person (spoken to)	ka/ikaw you (informal) kayo you (formal)		2000
3rd person (spoken about)	siya he/she	sila they	

Notice that 'you' (singular) has two forms: ka and ikaw. The

On arriving in Manila, you may be reluctant to carry any heavy luggage by hand through the airport. You may wish to make use of an airport trolley, but be aware that there is a charge of around 40 pesos. You will need to buy a trolley ticket from the booth clearly marked near the luggage retrieval carousel.





simple difference is that **ka** is *always* used as part of a sentence, 'kumusta **ka**?' (how are you?), whereas **ikaw** can stand alone (without being used in a sentence).

#### Exercise 1



Listen to the following Tagalog sentences on the tape. Practise reading each sentence aloud. Follow the pronunciation closely until you can repeat each word and sound with confidence.

Tagalog	Literal translation	Translation
Si Mary Smith ako	Mary Smith I	I am Mary Smith
Si Letty Zapanta ako	Letty Zapanta I	I am Letty Zapanta
Si Doktor Rivera kayo	Doctor Rivera you	You are Dr Rivera (formal
Si Ramon Tenoso siya	Ramon Tenoso he/she	He is Ramon Tenoso
Pilipino kami	Filipinos we	We are Filipinos
Estudyante tayo	Students we	We are students
Amerikano sila	Americans they	They are Americans

## Exercise 2

Underline the correct word.

- 1. He/ she is a nurse.
- 2. We are Americans.
- 3. I am a tourist.
- 4. You are a teacher.
- 5. They are priests.
- 6. You (plural) are doctors.
- 7. We are students.
- 8. You (polite) are British.
- 9. They are engineers.
- 10. He/she is a lawyer.

Nars (ka, ako, siya).

Amerikano (kami, kayo, sila).

Turista (tayo, ako, kami). Guro (ka, siya, ako).

Pari (kayo, tayo, sila).

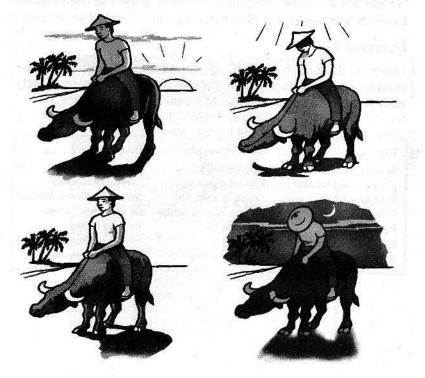
Doktor (kami, ka, kayo).

Estudyante (tayo, ako, sila). British (ka, ikaw, kayo).

Inhinyero (siya, sila, kayo).

Abogado (kayo, siya, ka).

## Greeting people at different times of the day



## Exercise 3

Match up the correct sentence with the correct drawing.

- 1. Magandang umaga Good morning
- 2. Magandang tanghali Good noon (midday)
- Magandang hapon
   Magandang gabi
   Good afternoon
   Good evening

## Exercise 4

What greeting would you use at the following times of day?

1.	6:00 a.m.	Magandang
2.	6:30 p.m.	Magandang
3.	12:00 a.m.	Magandang
4.	3:00 p.m.	Magandang

## Saying hello and goodbye

How you say 'hello' in Tagalog depends very much on who you are talking to. Four possible ways of saying hello follow, ranging from the informal 'kumusta', commonly used with friends and family, to the very formal and polite 'Kumusta po kayo'. Why not try practicing each of the examples given and think of someone you would use each example with. Saying goodbye in Tagalog is much less complicated than saying 'hello'. Any of the three examples given are acceptable in most circumstances.



Look at the different ways of saying hello and goodbye. All are commonly used. Listen carefully to the pronunciation on the accompanying tape. Try to copy what you hear by repeating each sentence.

#### Hello, goodbye

- Kumusta? Hello/how are you?
   Mabuti naman Fine, thank you Paalam na! Goodbye for now
- 2. Kumusta ka? Hello, how are you? Mabuti naman Fine, thank you Hanggang sa muli Till next time

- 3. Kumusta kayo? Hello, how are you?

  Mabuti po naman Fine, thank you (formal)
  O, sige ha? Until next time
- 4. Kumusta po kayo? Hello, how are you? (formal) Mabuti po naman Fine, thank you

## Dialogue 2

Using what you have learned so far, translate the following dialogue into English. Use the vocabulary box to help you with words you have not yet met. See how much you have learned in only a few pages!

Jobert meets the Cook family at the airport.

Bill Jobert, kumusta kayo?

Jobert Mabuti po naman, at kayo?

Bill Mabuti naman.

Jobert Kumusta kayo, Ginang Cook?

Louise Mabuti naman.

Jobert Kumusta ka, Roy?

Roy Mabuti rin naman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
at kayo Ginang	and you Mrs	
rin	too, also, as well	

## Exercise 5:

How would you say hello to the following people? Align the correct answer with the right person.

a.	your mother	1.	Kumusta ka	
b.	close friend	2.	Kumusta kayo	
c.	doctor	3.	Kumusta po kayo	
d.	young shop assistant	4.	Kumusta kayo	-
e.	the local mayor	5.	Kumusta po kayo	
f	taxi driver	6	Viimminata	

## Language Skills

#### 1 Si, Sina

In Tagalog, when using a person's name (including your own) always place the word 'si' before the name, i.e. si Cora, si Larry (Cora, Larry). When Cora or Larry are with their friends (i.e., more than one person) then 'sina' is used which is the plural of si, i.e., sina Cora, sina Larry (Cora and her friends, Larry and his friends). In jargon, si and sina are known as markers.

#### 2 Simple sentence construction

Broadly speaking, a simple English sentence consists of two main elements:

a *subject* (that is, 'who' or 'what' is being talked about) and a *comment* or a word which tells us something about the subject. For example, Bernie (subject) eats (comment), Tina (subject) sings (comment). Of course, there are different types of words and exceptions involved, but we will address each of these as we come to them. Look at the following table and compare the English sentence construction with that of Tagalog.

English	3000		Tagalog	
Manny is subject	an	engineer comment	Inhinyero comment	si Manny subject
You are subject		beautiful comment	Maganda comment	ka subject
This is subject	a	table comment	Mesa comment	ito subject
Bernie is subject		eating comment	Kumakain comment	si Bernie subject

You will notice that the Tagalog is much simpler than its English equivalent.

## (i) Cultural tip

You may have noticed that the Filipino approach to time is quite different from a Western approach. Filipinos commonly have a more relaxed approach to time. This sometimes irritates Westerners. Just relax and be patient! This is normal. A Filipino may not consider himself 'late' for an appointment until he is at least an hour beyond the arranged time. This is known as 'Filipino time'.

## 3 Formal or informal? Ka, kayo You

The emphasis on politeness in Filipino culture comes through clearly in the language of the people. In the Philippines, the English word 'you' is represented in two forms: One form is informal: ka, the second is the formal, polite form: kayo. At work, Filipinos address their superiors with kayo (you, polite singular) and use ka (you, familiar singular) with their colleagues and friends. Here is a table showing the differences in use:

Situation	Polite	Informal	Plural
	formal	familiar	
Child to parent	kayo		kayo
Parent to child		ka/ikaw	kayo
Friend to friend		ka/ikaw	kayo
Worker to superior	kayo		kayo
Superior to worker	2 1 1 2 2 2 2	ka/ikaw	kayo
Person to stranger	kayo		kayo
To older people	kayo		kayo
To people in authority	kayo		kayo
Colleague to colleague	3 m	ka/ikaw	kayo

## Exercise 6

Look at the pictures. Can you decide which is the correct word to use? Is it ka or kayo?

a. A little boy kissing his grandmother's hand



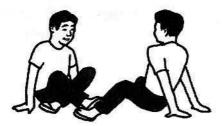
b. A father to a son



c. A husband to wife



d. A child to another child



#### One-minute phrases

**Segunda mano** (seh-goon-daw mah-naw) Of Spanish origin, meaning second hand

Bilugin ang ulo (bee-loo-geen ahng oo-law) Literally, to make the head round. A common colloquial phrase meaning to fool someone

Aywan ko sa iyo (eh-one-ko-sah-ee-yo)
Literally, I don't know with you A common Tagalog p

Literally, I don't know with you. A common Tagalog phrase, used to mean it's up to you

Huwag naman (hoo-wag-nah-man) This phrase is used as a polite way of saying: please don't

Hindi na bale (hin-dee-nah-bah-lee) Can be used to mean not to worry or it's not worth worrying about

## (i) Cultural tip

Whenever you meet someone for the first time, always use a formal address. Filipinos tend to begin new relationships on this more 'formal' level, progressing to the informal when they feel more comfortable with you. If you appear relaxed and friendly in their company, they will soon feel relaxed and friendly with you, too.

## ANONG ORAS ANG ALMUSAL? What time is breakfast?

### In this unit you will learn how to

- check in to your hotel
- ask simple questions
- use the verb 'to be'

## Checking in to your hotel

## Dialogue 1

Bill Cook and family arrive at their hotel. They will be staying here for five days, before moving on to the Abiva home in White Plains. Try to notice the different sounds of the Tagalog words.

Bill May kuwarto ba kayo?

Manedyer Mayroon po. Ibig po ba ninyo ng pang-isahan o

pandalawahan?

Bill Ibig namin ng pandalawahan at pang-isahan para sa

anak kong si Roy. Magkakano ba ang mga

kuwarto?

Manedyer Ang pandalawahan po ay \$\mathbb{P}900\$ isang gabi at ang

pang-isahan ay \$\mathbb{P}750 isang gabi. Puwede na po ba

para sa inyo?

Bill Oo, mabuti, salamat. Saan ako pipirma?

Manedyer Dito lang po sa ibaba, sir.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
may kuwarto ba kayo	have/has
mayroon	there is / there are
ibig po ba ninyo ng	do you want/like a
pandalawahan	double
at	and
pang-isahan	single
ibig namin	we want/like
para sa anak kong	for my son
magkakano	how much each
ang mga kuwarto	the rooms
isang gabi	per night
puede na po ba	is it alright sir / ma'am?
para sa inyo	for you
oo, mabuti	yes, good
salamat	thank you
saan ako pipirma	where do I sign?
dito lang po sa ibaba	just here below

#### **Translation**

Bill	Do you have a room?
Control Statement	- Journal a louin.

Manager Yes sir, we have. Do you want a single or a double room?

Bill I need a double room and also a single room for my

son, Roy. How much are the rooms?

Manager The double is ₱900 per night and the single is ₱750.

Is that all right, sir?

Bill Yes, that's fine. Thank you. Where do I sign?

Manager Just here below, sir.

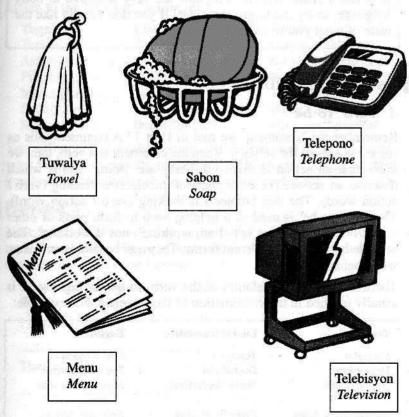
## Asking for a room... or anything else

Did you notice how Bill enquired about the rooms? He asked: 'May kuwarto ba kayo?' It's very easy to make an enquiry in Tagalog. Whether you want to ask about rooms, tee-shirts, sun tan lotion or banana splits, just remember to use the word 'may' (sounds like MEH) before the subject (thing) you want to ask about. Notice the word 'ba'. This is a simple word which follows the subject and lets the other person know that you are asking a question. Let's look at a few examples:

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
May tsinelas ba kayo?	Have sandals you?	Do you have any sandals?
May kuwarto ba kayo?	Have room you?	Do you have a room?
May mangga ba kayo?	Have mango you?	Do you have a mango?
May panahon ba kayo?	Have time you?	Do you have time?

## Exercise 1

Here are pictures of some everyday items you might need to ask for in your hotel. Practice asking for them using the formula: 'May (name of item) ba kayo?'



## (i) Cultural tip

Hospitality is very important in Filipino culture. Filipinos will warmly welcome a visitor into their home. However, if you wish to avoid drawing a Filipino into an embarrassing situation, try to avoid calling in unexpectedly at mealtimes. Out of politeness, you will be offered food or a place at table. You are not really expected to accept the invitation. Such a situation is potentially very embarrassing for your hosts as they may not have prepared enough food. Refuse politely. If you are offered a second or third time by the same person, then you should eat something, even if it is just a small amount. Filipinos are very sensitive to body language, so try not to grimace, even if you don't really like the taste of what you're eating!

## **Language skills**

#### 1 Verb 'to be'

Remember the 'comment' we met in Unit 1? A comment tells us something about the subject. When the comment is a verb, then we know that an action is involved. Verbs are 'doing' words which describe an action. For example, Bob (subject) is reading (verb / action word). The dog (subject) is barking (verb / action word). The verb 'to be' is used as a helping verb to form parts of other verbs. For example, we say 'I am working', not 'I working'. The verb 'to be' has eight different forms. They are: be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been.

There is no direct translation of the verb 'to be' in Tagalog. It is usually implied in the construction of the sentence. For example:

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Guro ako	Teacher I	I am a teacher
Doktor kayo	Doctor you	You are a Doctor
Nars siya dati	Nurse she formerly	Formerly she was
Nanggaling si Anna sa palengke	Came from Anna the market	a nurse Anna has been to the market

Look at the Tagalog equivalent of the verb 'to be':

Singular I am/was	<b>Tagalog</b> Ako	Plural We are/were	<b>Tagalog</b> Kami, tayo	
You are/were	Ka, ikaw	You are/were	Kayo	
He/she is/was	Siya	They are/were	Sila	

(There are more ways in which the verb 'to be' may be used in a sentence. We will look at these in later units.)

## Exercise 2

Listen to the following sentences.

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Turista ako	Tourist I	I am a tourist
Amerikano siya	He/she American	He/she is American
Pilipino kami	We Filipinos	We are Filipinos
Matangkad ka	Tall you	You are tall
Doktor tayo	Doctors we	We are doctors
Maganda sila	Beautiful they	They are beautiful

You will notice that each sentence is spoken slowly. Try to repeat what you hear during the pause after each sentence. Carry on until you become familiar with the words in each sentence.

## Exercise 3

Now let's see how well you've mastered what you heard on the tape. Write down a Tagalog sentence to translate the English. The first one has been done for you.

They are doctors.

Doctor sila.

I am a tourist.

They are tall.

She is beautiful.

You are an American.

## (i) Cultural Tip

Avoid giving offence in all things. Western culture tends to be more 'direct' in approaching any problem or difficulty that may arise. Be discreet and you will find that many potential problems will simply evaporate.

## **Enquiring about meals**

## Dialogue 2

We join Bill Cook at the reception desk of the hotel. He is asking the receptionist about mealtimes.

Bill Magandang umaga ma'am. Ano ang mga oras ng

pagkain dito sa hotel?

Receptionist Aba opo. Ang almusal ay buhat sa alas sais y

medya hanggang alas nuwebe y medya. Ang tanghalian ay buhat sa alas dose hanggang alas dos nang hapon. Ang hapunan ay buhat sa alas sais hanggang alas nuwebe nang gabi. May room

service po sa lahat ng oras.

Bill May makakainan bang malapit dito?

Receptionist Aba, opo. Ang 'Lola's Litson' ay may pagkain

hanggang hatinggabi.

Bill Mabuti kung ganoon. Hindi ba mahal?

Receptionist Hindi po. Masarap ang pagkain at mura ang

halaga.

Bill Maraming salamat.

Talasalitaan Vocabulary good morning magandang umaga what are the times of ... ano ang mga oras ng pagkain dito food here certainly sir aba opo breakfast almusal buhat sa from alas sais y medya 6.30 until hanggang alas nuwebe y medya 9.30 tanghalian lunch alas dose 12.00 midday alas dos nang hapon 2.00 p.m. hapunan supper alas sais 6 o'clock alas nuwebe nang gabi 9.00 p.m. sa lahat nang oras at anytime may makakainan bang is there any place to eat malapit dito near here may pagkain there is food hatinggabi midnight mabuti kung ganoon that's good hindi ba mahal? not expensive (I hope)? hindi po no sir the food is delicious/great masarap ang pagkain mura ang halaga the price is cheap/ right

#### Translation

Bill Good morning, Madame. What time are the meals

in the hotel?

Receptionist Of course, sir. Breakfast is from 6.30 until 9.30.

Lunch is from 12.00 until 2.00pm. Supper is from 6.00 until 9.00pm. Room service is available at

anytime sir.

Bill Are there any nice places to eat nearby?

Receptionist Certainly sir. 'Lola's Litson' serves delicious food

until midnight.

Bill That's good. Is it very expensive?

Receptionist No sir. The food is good and the price is cheap.

Bill Thank you.

## Language skills

## 2 May, mayroon Has/have, there/there are Wala None (no)

Remember the word 'may' we met on page 18? May always expresses possession of some specific but previously unidentified object or objects. May is always followed by the word or phrase expressing the object possessed. Confused? Don't panic! Take a look at these examples:

May problema sila. May sukli ba kayo? May taksi na po. May tao pa sa banyo.

They have a problem Do you have change? (formal) There is a taxi now (formal) There is still someone in the bathroom (lit.) or Someone is still in the bathroom Do you have a pencil?

May lapis ka ba?

Mayroon (also meaning has / have, there is / there are) is very similar to the word may, differing only in that it is used as a form of reply which stands alone. Whereas may must always be used in conjunction with a sentence, mayroon can be used as a one word reply. Don't be surprised if you often hear people say meron instead of mayroon. Both words have exactly the same meaning!

Q: May aklat ba si John? Has John got a book? A: Oo. Mayroon Yes he has (a book) Q: May problema ba kayo? Do you have a problem? A: Mayroon We have

## Exercise 4 Listening and understanding

Listen to the following example sentences:

1. Q: May guro ka ba? Do you have a teacher? A: Oo. Mayroon Yes. I have (a teacher) 2. Q. May barya ka ba? Do you have change? A: Oo. Mayroon Yes. I have (change) 3. Q: May lapis ba kayo? Do you have a pencil? (formal) A: Oo. Mayroon Yes. I have (a pencil)

Do you have a husband/wife? 4. O: May asawa ba kayo? (formal) Yes. I have (a husband/wife). A: Oo. Mayroon. Do you have any children? 5. O: May anak ba kayo? (formal) Yes. I have (children) A: Oo. Mayroon.

Repeat each sentence as you hear it, following the sound of the words as closely as possible. Why not try repeating the same exercise, this time without the help of the tape?

#### Exercise 5

Try constructing five sentences of your own, using the vocabulary provided. Answer all sentences by using Oo. Mayroon ('Yes. There is/there are').

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	1381
sasakyan	vehicle	
payong	umbrella	
kutsilyo	knife	
pinggan	plate	
baso	drinking glass	
ka	you (singular)	
kayo	you (formal)	

	27001AMC

This time practise answering in the negative. The opposite to may, mayroon (there is, there are, has, have) is wala (no, none). This time, answer using wala or wala akong (I do not have).

#### Examples:

1. Q: May asawa ba kayo? Do you have a wife/husband? A: Wala (Wala akong asawa) No (I don't have a wife/husband) 2. Q: May problema po ba kayo? Do you have a problem? (formal)

A: Wala (Wala akong No (I don't have a problem) problema)

3. Q: May anak ba kayo? Do you have children?

A: Wala (Wala akong anak) No (I don't have any children)

## Exercise 6

Use the pictures to help you fill in the space with the correct answer (using may and wala). The first one has already been done for you. The vocabulary box will help you, too.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
barko	ship	
dagat	sea/ocean	
mesa	table	
kuwarto	room	
walang kuwarta	no money	
pitaka	wallet	
basura	rubbish	
daan	road	
sombrero	hat	
lalaki	man	
walang pasahero	no passenger	
taksi	taxi	
sanggol	baby	
babae	woman	

1. May libro si Anna. sa kuwarto. ang pitaka. sa daan. ang taksi. ang babae.

TAGALOG

### **Cultural** tip

Filipino culture is very family oriented. If you want to make a good impression with your new Filipino friends, show genuine interest in their family. Learning names and nicknames of family members as quickly as possible is a good indication of your desire to be friendly. Typical Filipino nicknames include Toto, Nene, Boboy, Boy, Pinky and Baby.

#### 3 Question words: Sino? ano?, Who? what?

When we want to ask a question we start with words such as who, what, why, when, whose, where, how etc. Let's take a closer look at two of these words.

#### Sino

The Tagalog question word sino (meaning 'who' or 'whom') is used in three different ways:

- 1. with personal pronouns: ako, ka, siya, kami, tayo, kayo and sila (I, you, he/she, we, you (pl.), they)
- 2. with si plus a person's name (see Language skills, Unit 1)
- 3. with ang plus a word that tells us something about the subject.

The word which tells us something about the subject is called a noun; it tells us the name of a person, place or thing. As the question word we are using is **sino** or 'who?', the noun tells us something about a person, rather than a place or a thing. Don't worry if this sounds daunting. Listen to the following examples on the tape and then repeat them.

	me tape and a	ion repeat mem.		
20.1V 2007	Question	Translation	Reply	Translation
	Sino po kayo?	Who are you? (formal)	Si Larry ako	I am Larry
	Sino siya?	Who is he?	Si Louie siya	He is Louie
	Sino ang guro?	Who is the teacher?	Ako ang guro	I am the teacher
	Sino ang guro mo?	Who is your teacher?	Si Cora ang guro ko	Cora is my teacher

Sino ang bisita?	Who is the visitor?	Ang babae ang bisita	The woman is the visitor
Sino ang	Who is the	Ikaw ang	You are the
estudyante?	student?	estudyante	student

Did you notice how **sino** has been substituted with **si**, followed by the name of a person? Remember that every time you ask a question using **sino** (who?), the reply you receive will either be a person's name, **ang** + a noun, or a personal pronoun. Look at these examples:

Sentence	Translation	Reply	Translation
Sino ang British dito?	Who is the British (one) here?	Siya ang British dito	He is the British (one) here?
Sine ang guro?	Who is the teacher?	Ako ang guro	I am the teacher
Sino ang estudyante?	Who is the student?	Ikaw ang estudyante.	You are the student
Sino ang mga turista?	Who are the tourists?	Kami ang mga turista	We are the tourists

#### Ano

This is the most versatile of all Tagalog question words and is used to mean 'what?'. It may be used in connection with any of the following:

a noun (a name of a person, place or thing) an adjective (a word that describes a noun, e.g. big, dirty, small) a verb (a 'doing' word, e.g. drink, eat, sleep, sing).

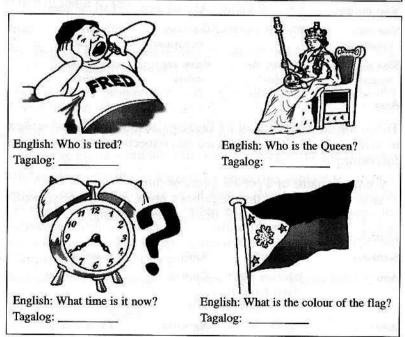
#### Examples:

What are you?* (very formal)	Guro ako.	I am a teacher
(* = what do yo	u do?)	
What is she?	Nars siya.	She is a nurse
What is your name?	John Joseph	(My name is)  John Joseph
What is this?	Lapis iyan	That is a pencil
	(very formal) (* = what do yo What is she? What is your name?	(very formal) (* = what do you do?)  What is she? Nars siya.  What is your John Joseph name?

## Exercise 7

Let's try using the words **sino** and **ano**. Look at the pictures. Can you ask a simple question using either **sino** or **ano**? Use the examples and the vocabulary box provided to help you.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
pagod	tired	
oras	time	to the appropriate
reyna	queen	
bandera	flag	
kulay	colour	
ng	of the	To refundadous
na	now/already	Control and the second



## One-minute phrases

Laman ng kalye (lah-man-nang-kal-yeh) Literally, contents of the street. This phrase is commonly used to refer to a person who seems to spend more time on the streets than at home.

Lutong Makaw (loo-tong-mah-kao) Literally, cooked in the Portuguese colony of Macau. This phrase is used to refer to something that has been manipulated or 'fixed' behind the scenes in order to ensure a particular outcome (i.e. the results of an election or a beauty contest, etc.)

Pantulak (pahn-too-lahk) Literally, something to push with. This popular and common Tagalog expression applies to any kind of drink consumed following food. The implication is that it will help the food slide down more easily to the stomach. For example: 'Ako ang bibili ng pansit at tinapay, ikaw ang bahala sa pantulak.' I'll buy the noodles and bread and you take care of something to wash it down with [drink]

Kape at gatas (kah-peh-at-gah-tas) Literally, coffee and milk. This phrase is similar in meaning to the English expression 'chalk and cheese'. It can be used to express notable differences between two people.

Kanang kamay (kah-nang-kah-my) Literally, right hand. This phrase is almost identical to the English expression 'my right hand'. It denotes a clear level of dependability.

## (i) Cultural tip

A smile will get you everywhere! Many Filipinos are very shy by nature. They may feel nervous when interacting with foreigners, mainly because they are not sure how to behave. A smile frequently offers the reassurance they need and communicates friendliness. If in doubt, try it out!

## In this unit you will learn how to

- meet your friend's family
- say 'thank you'
- use the definite and indefinite article
- make a statement negative

## Meeting your friend's family

## Dialogue 1

Roy Cook goes to the Abiva house to say hello to Jobert's family. He feels a little nervous, but Jobert is at hand to introduce him to everyone.

Jobert Halikayo, ito ang kaibigan ko na taga England.

Roy Magandang hapon sa inyong lahat. Si Roy ako, Roy Cook.

Jobert Ang nanay ko ito, si Teresita.

Teresita Kumusta ka, Roy?

Jobert Ang tatay ko ito, si Juan. Juan Kumusta ang England?

Jobert At si Pinky at Lovely, ang kapatid ko.

Pinky Maligayang pagdating, Roy.

Jobert At ang Lolo at Lola.

Roy Ikinagagalak ko kayong makilala!

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
halikayo	come on everyone
ito	this
kaibigan	friend
ko	my
taga	from
magandang hapon	good afternoon
sa inyong lahat	to you all
nanay	mother
tatay	father
kapatid	sister/brother
lolo	grandfather
lola	grandmother

#### Translation

Come on everyone, this is my friend from England. Jobert

Good afternoon to you all. I'm Roy, Roy Cook. Roy

This is my mother, Teresita. Jobert

How are you, Roy? Teresita This is my father, Juan. Jobert

How is England? Juan And Pinky, my sister. Jobert Pinky Pleased to meet you, Roy.

And finally, grandfather and grandmother. Jobert

I'm pleased to meet you all! Roy

Did you notice how Jobert introduced his family? Study the Tagalog dialogue for a few minutes, reading it aloud. Can you see how easy it was for Jobert to introduce everyone? You can use the same formula for introducing other relatives or friends, too. Take a look at some more examples:

Kapatid ko ito, si Anne. Pamangkin ko ito, si Lina. Pinsan ko siya. Bayaw ko si Bob.

This is my niece, Lina. He/she is my cousin. Bob is my brother-in-law.

This is my sister. Anne.

This is my sister-in-law, Elizabeth. Hipag ko ito, si Elizabeth.

Pamangkin ko ito, si Paul. Pamangkin ko ito, si Beth.

This is my nephew, Paul. This is my niece, Beth.

## Exercise 1

Using Jobert's words as a guide, try to introduce your own family to your Filipino friends. Use the examples just given and the vocabulary box to help you.

English	Tagalog	
a. Good Afternoon to you all.	100	
b. This is my grandmother.		
c. This is my father,		17.4
d. And, my brother.		189
e. This is my grandfather.	HW EI	
f. This is, my sister.		
g. And finally, my mother.	g	Targette Pourter

## Exercise 2

The plane journey to the Philippines is very long and tiring. Roy still has a bit of jet-lag and needs your help. Look at the picture gallery of different members of the Cook family. The names and pictures appear to have been mixed up. Can you help Roy place them in the correct order?



a) Nanay



c) Pamangkin



b) Kuya at Ate



d) Lola at Lolo



e) Hipag



f) Tatay



## **Cultural** tip

Never be afraid to try out the Tagalog you know, even if you don't feel too confident yet. What you say may not be 'perfect', but it will be highly appreciated by your Filipino friends. You will be surprised just how far a little goes!

## M Language skills

#### 1 The indefinite article, a and an

The English words 'a' and 'an' are known as indefinite articles. We use these words when referring to a person or thing about which we do not want to be specific. For example, a house, a car, a doctor, a tree. When the word begins with a vowel (a, e, i, o or u), then the indefinite article becomes 'an', for example, an apple, an aeroplane, an elephant. In Tagalog, there are two basic ways of representing the indefinite article. First, the indefinite article is implied (i.e. estudyante = a student, lapis = a pencil, aeroplano = an aeroplane). Second, both 'a' and 'an' are represented by the word ng pronounced (nang) when there is an action word (verb) in the sentence followed by an object. For example, 'Domingo has bought a book.' Bumili ng aklat si Domingo. 'Mario ate an apple.' Kumain ng mansanas si Mario.

Look at these sample sentences:

Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Kumakain si Manny ng mansanas	Eating Manny an apple	Manny is eating an apple
Arkitekto si Roy	Architect Roy	Roy is an architect
Doktor si Jonathan	Doctor Jonathan	Jonathan is a doctor
Nagbabasa si Joe ng aklat	Reading Joe a book	Joe is reading a book
Bumili kami ng mapa	Bought we a map	We bought a map

## Exercise 3

When you arrive in Manila, you may need to buy a few things before travelling around the country. Complete the sentences below using the sample sentences and the vocabulary box to guide you:

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
kailangan ko	I need/want
gusto kong bumili	I'd like to buy
payong	umbrella
posporo	a box of matches
nagtitinda ba kayo	do you sell
shampoo	shampoo
tee-shirt	tee-shirt
street guide	street guide
tinapay	bread
mapa	map

Tagalog	English	
1. Kailangan ko ng	I need a map.	
2. Gusto kong bumili ng	. I want to buy an umbrella.	
3. May ba kayo?	Do you have a box of matches?	
	Do you sell shampoo?	

## Exercise 4

Translate into Tagalog.

# 1. I need a tee-shirt. (use ng) 2. I want to buy a ticket (use ng) 3. Do you have a street guide? 4. Do you sell bread? (use ng)

## ( Cultural tip

If you don't know the Tagalog word, use the English one. Mixing Tagalog and English is known as *Taglish* and is quite acceptable. It is much more acceptable than just speaking English. If you have a keen ear, you may also have noticed many Spanish words in the Tagalog vocabulary. This is hardly surprising, given that the Spanish occupied the Philippines for more than 300 years. Spanish, however, has not been used as an official language in the Philippines for over 100 years.

## 2 Ang the definite article, the

In English, when we want to be specific about a person or a thing, we use the word 'the'. This word is known as the definite article. In Tagalog, the word 'the' is translated as 'ang'. For example: masarap ang pagkain = the food is delicious; matangkad ang estudyante = the student is tall; maganda ang dalaga = the girl is beautiful.

## Exercise 5

Bill Cook had a little too much to drink last night and is now having trouble with his Tagalog. His sentences are a bit jumbled. Can you help him sort them out? Use the vocabulary box to help you. Don't forget, the correct Tagalog sentence structure should be comment – definite article – subject. The correct English sentence is on the left:

# English Jumbled words 1. The weather is hot. 2. The street is dirty. 3. The car is clean. 4. The house is beautiful. bahay maganda ang 5. The man is a doctor. I agalog Tagalog Maganda Maganda Tagalog Maganda Mag

Bill has now sobered up a little, and some of his sentences are correct. However, he is still making a few mistakes. Can you tell which sentences are correct and which ones are not?

#### **English**

The room is small.
 The Jeepney is colourful.
 The flower smells fragrant.

4. The family is happy.

5. The fish is fresh.

#### Tagalog

Maliit ang kuwarto. Jeepney ang makulay. Mabango ang bulaklak.

Masaya ang pamilya.

Isda ang sariwa.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
panahon	weather
mainit	hot
kalsada	street
marumi	dirty
kotse	car
malinis	clean
bahay	house
maganda	beautiful
isda	fish
sariwa	fresh
pamilya	family
masaya	happy
bulaklak	flower
mabango	fragrant
mukulay	colourful
maliit	small

## Saying 'thank you'



## Dialogue 2

Roy gives a pasalubong (gift) to Jobert's parents.

Roy Para sa inyo ang regalong ito. Magustuhan sana ninyo. Mrs Abiva Isang kahon ng tsokolate! Mukhang masarap!

Maraming salamat, Roy.

Roy Wala pong anuman. Para sa inyo naman ito.

Mr Abiva Ang paborito kong tabako buhat sa Inglaterra!

Maraming-maraming salamat na muli.

Roy Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
para sa inyo	for you	
regalong ito	this gift	
magustuhan sana ninyo	I hope you'd like it	
rin	also	
isang kahon	one box	
mukhang	looks/appears	
ang paborito kong	my favourite	
buhat sa	from	
muli	again/once more	

#### Translation

Roy This gift is for you. I hope you'll like it.

Mrs Abiva A box of chocolates! They look delicious! Thank you

very much, Roy.

Roy You're welcome (polite). And this is for you.

Mr Abiva My favourite cigars from England. Thank you very

much again, Roy.

Roy You're welcome (polite).

### **Expressing gratitude**

Filipinos have many different ways of expressing their gratitude. This is part of the cultural stress on politeness. It is a good idea to learn as many different ways of saying 'thank you' as possible.

Here are some commonly used examples:

Salamat	Thanks/Thank you
Salamat sa iyo	Thank you (used with friends,
	informal, and
Approximation factors which an	family members)
Salamat sa inyo	Thank you (formal)
Salamat sa inyong lahat	Thank you all (informal)
Salamat po sa inyo	Thank you (very formal)
Maraming salamat po sa inyo	Thank you very much (very formal)
Maraming salamat	Thank you very much
Maraming salamat sa iyo	Thank you very much (informal)
Maraming-maraming-salamat	Thank you so very much
Maraming-maraming salamat sa iyo	Thank you so very much (informal)
Maraming-maraming salamat sa inyo	Thank you so very much (very formal)
Naku, nag-abala ka pa, salamat	Oh, you should not have bothered! Thank you
Naku. Nag-abala pa kayo, salamat	
Salamat na lang	I can only say thank you

## Exercise 6

Which of the forms of 'thank you' would you use with the following people? Can you see more than one answer for some of them?

a. Guest to waiter	CONTRACTOR OF THE SAME AND ADDRESS OF THE SAME ADDRESS OF THE SAME AND ADDRESS OF THE SAME ADD
b. Waiter to guest	STEEDS AND STREET
c. Guest to guest (of same age)	
d. Young guest to an older guest	58 2015 - F
e. Older guest to a young guest	A

When someone says 'thank you' to you in any of these ways, a simple and polite response is walang anuman. Cover up the list of common expressions. How many different ways of saying 'thank you' can you remember? Try to recall five of them and use them on your Filipino friends. They will be impressed not only by your knowledge of Tagalog, but also by your good manners!

## **& Language skills**

#### 3 Hindi No/not

Hindi is the most common and versatile way of saying no in Tagalog. Hindi transforms a positive statement into a negative statement. The word hindi comes before the comment (what is said about the subject) and the subject. For example, hindi masarap ang pagkain = the food is not tasty; hindi mainit ang kape = the coffee is not hot; hindi malayo ang palengke = the market is not far.

Meses in the	Tagalog	Literal translation	English
Hindi + noun	Hindi doktor si Fred.	Not doctor Fred	Fred is not a doctor.
Hindi + adjective	Hindi malinis ang kotse.	Not clean the car	The car is not clean.
Hindi + ba	Hindi ba nars si Letty?	Not nurse Letty?	Isn't Letty a nurse?
Hindi + pa	Hindi pa hinog ang mangga.	Not yet ripe the mango	The mango is not ripe.
Hindi + verb	Hindi umiinom ang bisita.	Not drink(ing) the visitor	The visitor isn't drinking.
Hindi + personal pronoun	Hindi siya Pranses.	Not he/she French	He/she is not French.
Hindi + pronoun	Hindi ito sariwa.	Not this fresh	This is not fresh.

## Exercise 7

Look at the pictures. Each picture is followed by a statement. Using the word hindi, turn each of these sentences into a negative statement.

Barko ito. (This is a ship.) (This is not a ship.) Malinis ang mesa. Neg. (The table is clean.) (The table is not clean.) Estudyante si Amy. (Amy is a student.) (Amy is not a student.)

Tumatakbo ang Jeepney Neg. (The Jeepney is moving.) (The Jeepney is not moving.)



#### 4. Wala None

The word wala expresses absence of something. Wala is a reply to a may or mayroon question. Unlike hindi, wala is followed by a ligatured pronoun. Example: Wala akong lapis, I don't have a pencil. Wala kaming guro, We don't have a teacher. Wala itong takip, This has no cover. However, when followed by a noun, wala takes a ligature. Example: Walang kotse si Shirley, Shirley doesn't have a car. Walang pera si Maria, Maria doesn't have money. Walang panahon si Julie, Julie doesn't have time. Look at the sample sentences:

Ouestion Reply: May pera ba si Ginoong Cruz? Wala. Walang pera si Ginoong Cruz. Has Mr Cruz got money? No. Mr Cruz hasn't got money. May asawa ba kayo? (formal) Wala. Wala akong asawa. Do you have a husband/wife? No. I don't have a husband/wife. May problema ka ba? (informal) Wala. Wala akong problema. Do you have a problem? No. I don't have a problem. May bus na ba? Wala. Wala pa. No. There's no (bus) yet. Is there a bus now? May pagkain ba dito? Wala. Walang pagkain dito. Is there food here? No. There's no food here. May Coke o Pepsi ba kayo? Wala. 7-Up lang. Do you have Coke or Pepsi? No. Just 7-Up.

### **Exercise 8**

Using the formula already given in the sample sentences, give the reply to the following questions:

1. May sasakyan ba sa bus stop? Neg. Is there a vehicle at the bus stop? No. There is no vehicle at the bus stop.

Neg.

2. May yelo ba kayo? Do you have any ice?

No. We have no ice. 3. May katulong ba si

Ginoong Reyes? Has Mr Reyes got a helper?

No. Mr Reyes has no helper.

#### More on Hindi? No/not? Wala? No/none?

It is common for English speakers to experience some confusion between the use of hindi and wala. When we use the word 'none' in English, the Tagalog translation of this is 'wala'. The problem arises when we realise that in English, the word 'no' can also be used to mean 'none'. For example, the response to the question.

'do you have a ticket?' can be 'no'. In this situation, the word 'no' expresses an absense of something. That's why non-Tagalog speakers sometimes make the mistake of saying hindi instead of wala when they mean 'none'; for hindi also means 'no'! Confused? Don't panic! Study the sample sentences:

Sentence	Negative	Question	Reply
Amerikano si Jim.	Hindi British si Jim.	British ba si Jim?	Hindi.
Jim is American.	Jim is not British.	Is Jim British?	No. Jim is American.
Tagalog si Elvie.	Hindi Bisaya si Elvie.	Bisaya ba si Elvie?	Hindi.
Elvie is Tagalog.	Elvie is not Visayan.	Is Elvie Visayan?	No. Elvie is Tagalog.
Malaki ang Australia.	Hindi maliit ang Australia?	Maliit ba ang Australia?	Hindi.
Australia is big.	Australia is not small.	Is Australia small?	No. It is big.

Remember: If you want to express the absence of something or someone, then the correct word to use is wala.

#### One-minute phrases

Walang wala (wah-lang-wah-lah) Literally, no nothing. This commonly used Tagalog phrase means: I have no money or I'm broke.

May sama ng loob (my-sa-mah-nang-law-awb) Literally, having a bad feeling inside. If Filipinos feel hurt or offended, they will typically not express their feelings in a direct manner. This phrase suggests a common Filipino way of expressing feelings in more general terms. 'May sama ako ng loob sa kaniya.' I have a bad feeling towards her/him.

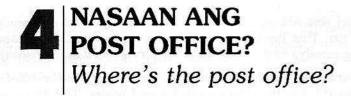
Magmahabang dulang (mag-ma-hah-bang-doo-lang) Literally, a long dining table. This expression indicates a forthcoming marriage. 'Magmamahabang dulang ang anak ni Ginoong Cruz.' The son of Mr Cruz is getting married. The long dining table is typical of buffet-style meals used during Filipino festivals.

May sinasabi (my-see-nah-sa-bee) Literally, to have something to say. This Tagalog expression denotes wealth. 'May sinasabi ang pamilya Santos.' The Santos family are well-heeled/wealthy.

Maraming kuskos-balungos (mah-rah-ming-kus-kus-bah-loongoos) Literally, a lot of scrubbing and fussing. This expression is used in connection with a person who has difficulty in making his or her point. 'Maraming kuskos-balungos si Pedro.' Pedro beats around the bush a lot.

## (I) Cultural Tip

You may have noticed some Filipinos kissing the hand of a senior member of the family or people of social standing. This custom, known as **mano**, is seen as a mark of respect. Do not be surprised if Filipino children do this to you! It is also a way of showing respect to the visitor.



### In this unit you will learn how to

- ask 'where?'
- buy stamps and send a parcel
- use adjectives

## Asking 'where?

## Dialogue 1

Louise Cook wants to go to the post office. Let's join her as she asks the hotel receptionist how to get there. Listen carefully to the sound of the words. You will notice that when a question is asked, the tone of the final word goes up. All question words in Tagalog have this feature.

Louise Nasaan ang pinakamalapit na post office dito?

**Receptionist** Nasa Kalye Maningning po.

Louise Puwede bang lakarin?

Receptionist Aba, opo.

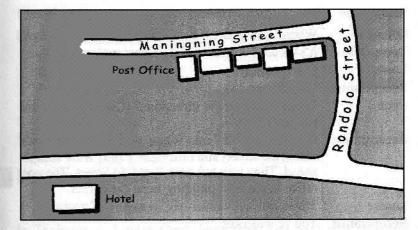
Louise Maaari bang bigyan mo ako ng direksiyon?

Receptionist Ganito po. Paglabas ninyo sa hotel, tumawid kayo

at kumanan. Dumiretso kayo. Pagkatapos kumaliwa kayo sa Kalye Rondolo. Ikalimang

gusali buhat sa kanto ang post office.

Louise Maraming salamat. Receptionist Wala pong anuman.



Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
nasaan	where
pinakamalapit	nearest
nasa	at/on/in/at the/on the/ in the
puwede bang	is it possible
lakarin	to walk (it)
aba	of course/hey/my
оро	yes (formal)
maaari bang	is it possible (see also puwede bang)
bigyan mo ako	give me
direksiyon	direction
ganito po	like this
paglabas ninyo	once you've come out
tumawid kayo	you cross (the street)
dumiretso kayo	walk straight ahead
kumanan	turn right
pagkatapos	then
kumaliwa	turn left
ikalimang gusali	fifth building
kanto	corner
wala pong anuman	you're welcome (formal)

#### **Translation**

**Louise** Where's the nearest post office here? **Receptionist** It's located at Maningning Street ma'am.

**Louise** Can I walk it? **Receptionist** Yes, ma'am.

Louise Could you give me directions? [Could you tell me

where it is?]

Receptionist It's like this ma'am. When you leave the hotel,

cross [the street] and turn right. [You] Walk straight ahead. Then turn left onto Rondolo Street. The post

office is the fifth building from the corner.

Louise Thank you very much.

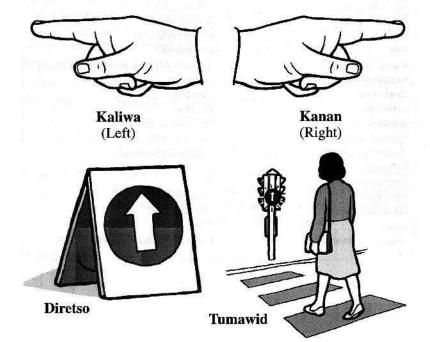
Receptionist You're welcome.

## E

#### Exercise 1



Listen carefully to the 'direction' words on your tape. The pictures should help you.



Match the Tagalog with the correct English:

English Tagalog

1. Turn left kumanan

2. Turn right diretso

3. Straight ahead tumawid kayo

4. Right kaliwa

5. Cross (the street) kumaliwa

## M Language skills

6. Left

#### 1 Nasaan? Where? (location)

In Dialogue 1, Louise Cook introduced you to a new question word: 'nasaan' or 'where'? She asked: 'Nasaan ang Post Office?' (Where is the post office?'). Nasaan is a commonly used question word which asks where a thing or a place is located. e.g. nasaan ang aklat ko? (where is my book?), nasaan ang immigration office? (where is the immigration office?). Notice that the hotel receptionist began her reply with nasa. This has nothing to do with American astronauts but is the way to answer a nasaan question in Tagalog. The reply to nasaan should always begin with the word nasa followed by the location of the subject of the sentence. For example, 'nasaan ang bahay mo?' (where is your house?), 'nasa Kalye Cruz ang bahay ko (my house is in Cruz Street).

kanan

## Exercise 2



Listen to the following nasaan questions and answers on your tape. Repeat what you hear until you feel confident. Why not try to make up a few nasaan questions for yourself? Ask your Filipino friends to help you. First try asking the nasaan question, then change places and try giving the nasa answers.

Question Reply:

Nasaan ang Maynila? Nasa Pilipinas ang Maynila.

Where is Manila? Nasaan ang Mayon Volcano? Nasa Albay ang Mayon Volcano.

Where is the Mayon Volcano? Mayon Volcano is in Albay.

51

Nasaan ang barko? Where is the ship?

Nasaan ang mga bata? Where are the children?

Nasaan ang sombrero? Where is the hat?

Nasa dagat ang barko. The ship is on the ocean.

**TAGALOG** 

Nasa bahay ang mga bata. The children are at home.

Nasa silya ang sombrero. The hat is on the chair.

Note: In English, two vowels may occur commonly together (a, e, i, o, u) and be pronounced as one sound. For example, hoop, keep, people, tea, beach. These double vowel sounds are known as diphthongs. In Tagalog, each vowel is pronounced separately and so there are no diphthongs. For example, the word nasaan is not pronounced nasan but rather nah-sah-an. Both a's are pronounced separately. Remember: This applies to all Tagalog words where two vowels occur together.

## Exercise 3

Look at the pictures. Roy Cook is confused and doesn't know where each of these places are. He needs to ask a passer-by for help. What question would Roy ask and what reply would the passer-by give? For example: 'Nasaan ang Robinson's Shopping Mall?' 'Nasa Edsa ang Robinson's Shopping Mall.' Use the clue words accompanying each picture to help you formulate your answers.



Clues: Simbahan Sto. Domingo



Clues: Jeepney stop Guzman Street



Clues: Palengke Cubao



Clues: Bangko Makati

Read out your answers and practise them with your Filipino friends. You will be surprised how quickly you can ask where something or somewhere is!

## Buying stamps and sending a parcel

## Dialogue 2

Louise Cook has arrived at the post office and is talking to a clerk.

Louise Gusto kong bumili ng selyo para sa mga postcards ko.

Clerk Saan po ang punta ng mga postcards?

Louise Sa Inglatera at sa Amerika.

Clerk 3.80 po ang isang selyo. Ilang selyo po ang kailangan

ninyo?

Louise Labinlima. May pakete rin ako papunta sa Inglaterra,

airmail.

Clerk 57.00 pesos po ang selyo. Pakilagay po sa timbangan ang

pakete. Ano po ang laman ng pakete?

Louise Isang aklat. Magkano naman ito?

Clerk 240.00 pesos ang pakete. Paki-abot po sa akin ang pakete.

Louise Salamat. Eto ang bayad ko.

Clerk Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaa	n

gusto ko bumili ng selyo para sa mga saan

ang punta isang selyo ng mga ilang selyo

ang kailangan ninyo labinlima papunta sa pakilagay sa timbangan

#### Vocabulary

I like/ I want
buy some stamps
for (plural)
where (direction)
the destination / going to
one stamp
of the (plural)
how many stamps
what you need
fifteen
going to
please put/place
on the scales

ang pakete ang laman isang aklat paki-abot sa akin magkano naman the parcel the contents one book/ a book please pass to me

please pass to me/ hand to me

how much is it?

here is my payment

#### Translation

eto bayad ko

Louise I want to buy some stamps for my postcards.

Clerk Where are they going to?

Louise To England and to America.

Clerk One stamp costs 3.80. How many stamps do you want?

Louise Fifteen (stamps). I also have a parcel going to England

by airmail.

Clerk The stamps cost 57 pesos. Please put the parcel on the

weighing machine. What is the content of the parcel?

Louise A book. How much is it?

Clerk The parcel will be 240 pesos. Could you please hand me

the parcel?

Louise Thank you. Here's my payment (money).

Clerk You're most welcome.









### **.**

#### Exercise 4

Read through Dialogue 2 again. Imagine that you too are making a trip to the post office. Using the dialogue and the vocabulary box provided to help you, how would you say the following in Tagalog?

- 1. I want to buy stamps for my parcel.
- 2. I want to buy stamps for a letter to America.
- 3. How much are the air letters each?
- 4. Where are the scales?
- 5. Kindly weigh the parcel for me.



Listen to the tape. The clerk at the post office asks you: 'Ano pong maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?' or 'How may I help you?' You may respond by using the answers you have already provided in this exercise.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
papunta sa	going to
sulat	letter
magkakano	how much (each)
para sa akin	for me



#### Exercise 5

Listen to the following words on the tape and then try repeating them. Cover the list up and try to see how many you can recall without looking at the book. Why not ask your Filipino friends to help you?

#### Listen and repeat

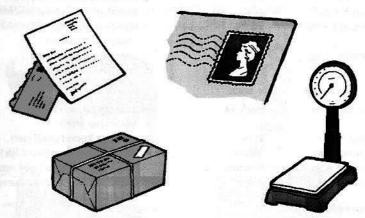
selyo
sobre
pakete
timbangan
ihulog
sulat
bolpen
tali
kahon
pambalot



#### Exercise 6

Exercise

Look at the drawings. Listen to the list of items read out on the tape and tick or circle the ones you can see:



## M Language skills

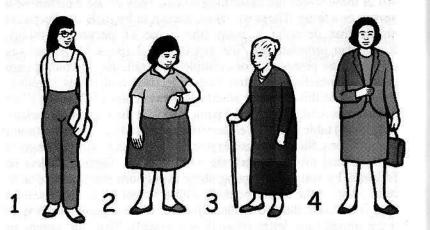
#### 2 Adjectives, words that 'describe'

Pretty, tall, good, large, far, terrific, amusing, runny, fat, tired etc. All of these words are describing words. They create a picture of a person or a thing. These words are known in English as adjectives; words that describe a noun (the name of person or thing). Remember pronouns we first met in Unit 1 (page 8)? Adjectives also describe pronouns. For example, he is tall, they are old, we are wealthy. Sometimes we use both adjectives and nouns together. When we do this, then the adjective always comes before the noun it describes. Confused? Don't panic! Look at these examples: clean (adjective) table (noun) = clean table. Good (adjective) news (noun = good news. Short (adjective) story (noun) = short story. The good news is that this is written the same way in Tagalog (adjective followed by noun). In Tagalog, there is only one simple addition to remember: if the adjective ends with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u), then 'ng' is added to the end of the adjective. If the adjective ends with a consonant (any letter other than a vowel), then 'na' comes in between the adjective and the noun. Let's take a look at some examples.

Adjective + ng	+ noun	= phrase
maganda + ng	bahay	= magandang bahay (beautiful house)
mahaba + ng	pila	= mahabang pila (long queue)
mabuti + ng	guro	= mabuting guro (good teacher)
maligaya + ng	Pasko	= maligayang pasko (happy Christmas)
matalino + ng	estudyante	= matalinong estudyante (intelligent student)
Adjective + na	+ noun	= phrase
masarap + na	pagkain	= masarap na pagkain (delicious food)
maliit + na	kotse	= maliit na kotse (small car)
mahirap + na	buhay	= mahirap na buhay (hard life)
madilim + na	kuwarto	= madilim na kuwarto (dark room)
pagod + na	kabayo	= pagod na kabayo (tired horse)

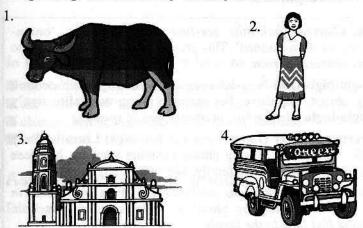
## Exercise 7

Look at the four cartoon drawings. Each one is numbered. Now listen carefully to a description of three of the women. Can you identify which ones are being described? Use the examples and vocabulary just given to help you. Can you write down a description of the woman who is not mentioned on the tape?



## Exercise 8

Look carefully at the following pictures. Using the vocabulary box below, describe what you see in as many different ways as possible, using as many adjectives as you can. For example, 'Magandang, maliit na bahay' (beautiful, small house)



Well done! Whether you are in the house, taking a break at the office or sitting outside, look around you for a moment. Try to describe some of the things you see using the vocabulary you have learned so far in this book. Why not try it out with your Filipino friends, too?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
mabango	fragrant
maganda	beautiful/pretty
malaki	big a my shall are us break and
masaya	happy
mabilis	fast
makulay	colourful
mabaho	bad smelling
mabait	kind
mahaba	long
siksikan	crowded
mabagal	slow
maikli	short

malinis clean
marumi dirty
kaakit-akit attractive

#### One-minute phrases

**Balat-sibuyas** (bah-laht see-boo-yahs) Literally, 'onion-skinned' or 'thin-skinned'. This phrase is used when referring to a very sensitive person.

Pabigla-bigla (pah-beeg-lah beeg-lah) – lacking in self-control, hasty, abrupt, impulsive. For example Kung magsalita siya'y pabigla-bigla. He/she has an abrupt way of speaking.

Suwerte sa buhay (soo-wer-teh sah boo-high) Literally, lucky in life. A common Tagalog phrase meaning someone has been bringing good luck to the family. The opposite is:

Malas sa buhay (mah-lahs sah boo-high) Literally, bad luck in life. A common Tagalog phrase meaning someone has been bringing bad luck to the family.

Malinis sa katawan (mah-le-nees sah kah-tah-wahn) Literally, clean in the body This expressions refers to a person who likes being physically clean and tidy.

## (i) Cultural tip

Filipinos will rarely use their hands or fingers to point when giving directions. Instead, they may purse their lips or even nod their heads to indicate the general direction you need to go in. This is normal, so don't be surprised if it happens.



### In this unit you will learn how to

- ask the price of goods and haggle
- ask 'how much?' and 'how much each?'
- change currency/travellers' cheques at the bank
- tell the time

## Asking the price of goods

## Dialogue 1

All over the Philippines you will find small stores selling basic items such as food and school supplies. These small businesses sell various and 'assorted' items. The Tagalog word for assorted is sarisari. These small shops are known in the Philippines as 'sarisari stores'. In this dialogue, we join Bill Cook at a local sarisari store.

Bill Tao po!

Owner Magandang hapon po.

Bill Magandang hapon po naman. May sobre ba kayo?

Owner Mayroon po, maliit po ba o malaki? Bill Iyong maliit lang. Magkano naman?

Owner Limang piso po isang dosena.

Bill O sige, isang dosena nga. At ang bolpen?
Owner Tig-tatlong piso po. Anong kulay po?

Bill Itim. Bigyan mo nga ako ng isa.

Owner Heto po. Disi-otso pesos po lahat-lahat. Ano pa po sir?

Bill Iyan lang. Heto ang bayad ko.

Owner Salamat po.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
may	has/ have	
mayroon	has/ have (used in replies)	
bigyan	give	
itim	black	
limang piso	five pesos	
isang dosena	one dozen	
sige	all right/ okay	
nga	please/indeed/really	
iyan lang	that's all (just those)	
tig-tatlong piso	three pesos each	
anong kulay	what colour	
tao po?	anyone at home?	
naman	to you toolon the other hand	
heto	here you are	
disi-otso pesos	eighteen pesos	
lahat-lahat	all in all/altogether	
ano pa?	anything else/what else?	
bayad ko	my payment	

#### Translation:

Bill	Anyone at home?
Owner	Good afternoon.

Bill Good afternoon to you, too... do you have any

envelopes?

Owner Yes we have sir, small or large (ones)?

Bill Just the small ones. And how much are they?

Owner Five pesos a dozen sir.

Bill All right, a dozen please. And the ballpens?

Owner Three pesos each sir. What colour?
Bill Black. I would like to buy one.

Owner Here you are sir. Eighteen pesos altogether. Do you

want anything else?

Bill That's all. Here you are. (lit., here's my payment)

Owner Thank you sir.



## **M** Language skills:

#### 1 Isa, dalawa, tatlo, etc. One, two, three, etc.

Filipinos tend to use both Tagalog, Spanish and English when counting. This is hardly surprising when we look at the history of the country. The Philippines was under Spanish rule for over 300 years and American rule for 50 years. Both countries have left their mark on the Philippines in both its culture and language. Note, however, that the Spanish spelling and pronunciation used in the Philippines is not the same as the standard Spanish spelling and pronunciation. Look at this table:



Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the words.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
one	isa	uno
two	dalawa	dos
three	tatlo	tres
four	apat	kuwatro
five	lima	singko
six	anim	sais
seven	pito	siyete
eight	walo	otso
nine	siyam	nuwebe
ten	sampu	diyes

MONEY

#### Memorising tip

Cover up both the Tagalog and Filipino Spanish columns. Try repeating first the Spanish numbers, then the Tagalog numbers. How many can you remember? Do not move on to the next set of numbers until you feel confident with numbers one—ten. If you want to memorise the numbers effectively, then try not to swallow too much at once. You will be surprised to see how much more quickly and effectively you are learning! Follow this pattern for all subsequent groups of numbers.

5.39

Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the words.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
eleven	labing-isa	onse
twelve	labindalawa	dose
thirteen	labintatlo	trese ***********************************
fourteen	labing-apat	katorse
fifteen	labinlima	kinse
sixteen	labing-anim	disisais
seventeen	labimpito	disisiyete
eighteen	labingwalo	disiotso
nineteen	labinsiyam	disinuwebe

Follow the memorising tip!



Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the words.

<b>English</b>	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
twenty	dalawampu	beinte
twenty one	dalawampu't isa	beinte uno
twenty two	dalawampu't dalawa	beinte dos
twenty three	dalawampu't tatlo	beinte tres
twenty four	dalawampu't apat	beinte kuwatro
twenty five	dalawampu't lima	beinte singko
twenty six	dalawampu't anim	beinte sais
twenty seven	dalawampu't pito	beinte siyete
twenty eight	dalawampu't walo	beinte otso
twenty nine	dalawampu't siyam	beinte nuwebe

Follow the memorising tip!

For the following numbers, repeat the process as in 21–29 in both Tagalog and Spanish.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
thirty	tatlumpu	treinta
forty	apatnapu	kuwarenta
fifty	limampu	singkwenta
sixty	animnapu	sisenta
seventy	pitumpu	sitenta
eighty	walumpu	otsenta
ninety	siyamnapu	nubenta

Listen to the correct pronunciation on your tape and repeat the word.

English	Tagalog	Filipino Spanish spelling
one hundred	isandaan	siyento
two hundred	dalawandaan	dos siyentos
three hundred	tatlongdaan	tres siyentos
four hundred	apatnaraan	kuwatro siyentos
five hundred	limandaan	singko siyentos
six hundred	animnaraan	sais siyentos
seven hundred	pitongdaan	siyete siyentos
eight hundred	walongdaan	otso siyentos
nine hundred	siyamnaraan	nuwebe siyentos
one thousand	isanlibo	mil



#### Exercise 1

Why not try out your new knowledge of Spanish and Tagalog numbers?

- 1. What is the Spanish number for 19?
- 2. What is the Tagalog number for 64?
- 3. What is the Spanish number for 99?
- 4. What is the Tagalog number for 27?
- 5. What is the Spanish number for 115?
- 6. What is the Tagalog number for 480?

## Exercise 2



Louise Cook was delighted to discover that there is also a weekly lottery draw in the Philippines. She chose the numbers 4, 11, 16, 34, 39 and 45. Can you help Louise to check her lottery ticket? Listen to this week's numbers as they are broadcast on the radio.



#### 2 Counting money

The Philippine peso comes in the following denominations:













Tagalog	Spanish	English	
piso	peso	one peso	
dalawang piso	dos pesos	two pesos	
tatlong piso	tres pesos	three pesos	
apat na piso	kuwatro pesos	four pesos	
limang piso	singko pesos	five pesos	
anim na piso	sais pesos	six pesos	
pitong piso	siyete pesos	seven pesos	
walong piso	otso pesos	eight pesos	
siyam na piso	nuwebe pesos	nine pesos	
sampung piso	diyes pesos	ten pesos	

#### Exercise 3

Louise Cook found some peso notes in her purse. Using what you have learned so far in this unit, can you help her count the money? Put the subtotal in the column on the right. How much money does she have in her purse altogether?

Sub-total:

- 1. Limang piso + sampung piso =
- 2. Limang piso + limang piso =
- 3. Dalawampung piso + limampung piso =
- 4. Limampung piso + limampung piso =
- 5. Limandaang piso + limandaang piso =

**Total** 

Now try repeating this exercise, this time using Spanish numbers.

### 3 Anong oras na? Telling the time

Now that you feel confident with numbers, you will be pleased to hear that telling the time in the Philippines is done almost exclusively in Filipino Spanish. The hours in Filipino Spanish are as follows:

Filipino Spanish English Ala-una One o'clock Alas dos Two o'clock Alas tres Three o'clock Alas kuwatro Four o'clock Alas singko Five o'clock Alas sais Six o'clock Alas siyete Seven o'clock Alas-otso Eight o'clock Alas nuwebe Nine o'clock Alas dives Ten o'clock Alas-onse Eleven o'clock Alas dose Twelve o'clock

To say 'half past' the hour, simply mention the hour followed by 'y medya' (pronounced: 'eeh mehd-yah'). For example, 3.30 would be 'alas tres y medya'.

To say XX minutes <u>past</u> the hour, simply mention the hour followed by the minutes in Filipino Spanish (see table). For example, twenty five minutes past six would be 'alas sais beinte singko'. Quarter past ten would be: 'Alas diyes kinse'.

To say XX minutes **before** the hour, simply say: 'menos XX \_\_\_\_\_ [number of minutes] para alas \_\_\_\_\_ [the hour]'.

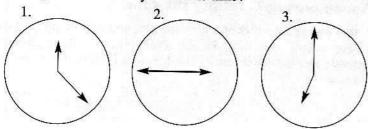
For example, twenty minutes to three: 'menos beinte para alas tres'. Ten minutes to eleven would read: 'menos diyes para alas onse', and so on.

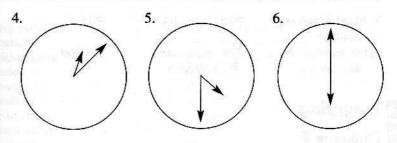
To ask the time, simply say: 'Anong oras na?'

### E

### Exercise 4

'Anong oras na?' Can you tell the time?





### 2 Magkano, magkakano How much, how much each?

In Dialogue 1 of this unit, Bill Cook purchased some envelopes from the local sarisari store. The question word he used was magkano (how much). He said: 'Magkano naman?' (How much is it?). Magkano simply means how much. For example: 'Magkano ang Tee-shirt?' How much is the tee-shirt? Magkano may also refer to the total sum of your purchase/s. Be careful, however, not to confuse magkano (how much) and magkakano which means how much each. For example, if there are many mangoes in a basket, unless you want to buy the whole basket of mangoes, you need to ask: 'magkakano ang mangga? How much are the mangoes each?

#### Responding to 'magkano' and 'magkakano'

Now that you are confident in asking 'how much' or 'how much each', how do you respond to these questions? There are two basic ways of responding: 1) Replace **magkano** or **magkakano** with the price of the item and then repeat the whole sentence; 2) simply give the price.

Question	Reply	Quick reply
1. Magkano ang isang yarda ng lace?	₱35.00 ang isang yarda ng lace.	₱35.00.
How much is a yard of lace?	A yard of lace costs ₱35.00.	₱35.00.
2. Magkano ang sombrero?	₱95.00 po ang sombrero	₱95.00 <b>po.</b>
How much is the hat?	The hat costs ₱95.00 (formal)	₱95.00 sir/madam. (formal)

# Haggling

### Dialogue 2

While sightseeing Louise Cook finds herself at an open market. She begins speaking with a woman standing behind one of the market stalls.

Tindera Bili na, bili na. Murang-mura. Louise Magkakano ang sombrero?

Tindera Ma'am mura lang po. Tig-siyento singkwenta pesos

po.

Louise Mura? Kay mahal nga eh!

Tindera Aba, maganda po iyan. Buntal po, tingnan ninyo -

isukat po ninyo.

Louise (Isinukat) Medyo maliit. Wala bang tawad? Tindera Mura na po. Magkano ba ang gusto ninyo?

Louise Sitenta y singko pesos.

Tindera Kayo naman! Hindi po. Malulugi po ako. Sige, siyento

beinte pesos po.

Louise Eto lang ang pera ko, otsenta pesos.

Tindera Isandaan po, mura na po iyan.

Louise Otsenta lang talaga.

Tindera Nobenta po, mayaman naman kayo.

Louise O, sige, otsenta y singko, kung hindi, hindi na bale.

Tindera Sige na po, otsenta y singko. Louise Salamat, eto ang bayad ko.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	I DILLIY
tindera	vendor	
bili na	come and buy	
murang-mura	very cheap	
tig-siyento singkuwenta pesos	F 150.00 each	

kay mahal nga	in fact it's expensive
buntal	a kind of Philippine fibre
TOTAL CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY O	
tignan ninyo	you have a look
isukat ninyo	you try
medyo maliit	slightly small
wala bang tawad?	any chance of a discount?
gusto ninyo	you like
kayo naman	Oh, you
malulugi	I'll lose
eto lang	just this
talaga	really
mayaman naman kayo	anyway you are rich
o, sige	all right/ okay
kung hindi	if not
hindi na bale	never mind

#### **Translation**

**Vendor** Come and buy, come and buy. Very cheap.

Louise How much each are the hats?

Vendor Ma'am so cheap. (They're) ₱150.00 each.

Louise Cheap? Actually they're expensive!

**Vendor** They're pretty. Made of buntal. Just look at them – why

don't you try one?

Louise (Trying one on) A little bit small. No discount?

Vendor That's ever so cheap. How much do you want to pay

(for it)?

Louise **₱**75.00.

Vendor Please! I can't. I'll lose out. (It won't even pay for my

overheads!).Okay, ₱120.00 ma'am.

Louise This is all the money I've got, ₱80.00.

Vendor One hundred pesos ma'am, that's ever so cheap.

Louise I can only really pay ₱80.00.

Vendor ₱90.00 ma'am, anyway you are rich.

Louise Okay, \$\mathbb{P}85.00\$, if not, never mind (I won't buy it).

Vendor Okay ma'am, ₱85.00.

Louise Thank you, here you are. (lit, here's my payment)

MONEY

### V

### Exercise 5

Imagine you are at a local market in the Philippines. Try asking how much different items are, using both **magkano** and **magkakano**. Use the vocabulary box to help you. Why not ask your Filipino friends to help you, too!

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
mangga	mango
guyabano	soursop
dalandan	oranges
papaya	papaya
pinya	pineapple
saging	banana
lanzones	lanzones (tropical fruit, similar to lychee)
bayabas	guava
talong	eggplant (aubergine)
ampalaya	bitter melon
kalabasa	squash
sili	hot pepper
kamatis	tomatoes
pechay	pakchoi (Chinese cabbage)
repolyo	cabbage

# cheques at the bank

### Dialogue 3

Bill and Louise Cook want to change some money at the bank. Bill strikes up a conversation with one of the bank tellers.

**Teller** Magandang umaga po. Ano po ang maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?

Bill Magandang umaga naman. Gusto kong magpapalit ng sterling pounds.

Teller Magkano po?

Bill Limandaang sterling pounds. Magkano ba ang palit?

Teller Sisenta y otso pesos po sa isang sterling pound.

Changing currency and travellers'

Bill O sige. Heto. (Iniabot)

Teller (Bumilang). O, heto po ang pera at recibo ninyo.

Bill Nagpapalit din ba kayo ng travellers cheques?

Teller Opo. Pero sisenta pesos po ang palit. Kailangan po namin ang pasaporte ninyo.

Bill Heto ang travellers cheques at ang pasaporte ko. Teller Sige po, pirmahan lang po ninyo ang mga tseke.

Bill Salamat.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ano po ang maipaglilingkod ko	what (service) can I do?
gusto kong magpapalit ng	I want to change some
ang palit	the exchange rate
sa isang	to one/ against one
iniabot	handed over
bumilang	counted
pera at recibo ninyo	your money and receipt
nagpapalit din ba kayo	do you also change?
kailangan po namin	we need
pasaporte ninyo	your passport
pirmahan lang	(just) please sign
ang mga tseke	the cheques

#### Translation

Teller Good morning sir. What can I do for you?

Bill Good morning to you too. I'd like to change some sterling pounds.

Teller How much sir?

Bill £500.00 What (how much) is the exchange rate?

Teller (It's) 68 pesos to a sterling pound.

Bill Okay. Here you are. (Handing him the money)
Teller (Counting). Here's your money and receipt sir.

Bill Do you also change travellers' cheques?

Teller Yes sir. But the exchange rate is 60 pesos to a sterling pound. We'll need your passport.

Here are my travellers' cheques and my passport.

Teller Kindly (please) sign the cheques, sir.

Bill Thank you.

Bill

### Exercise 6



How much of the conversation at the bank can you remember? Listen to the tape again and follow Dialogue 3 (page 72). The following statements or questions appeared in the dialogue.

#### True or false?:

1. Ano po ang maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo? True / False

2. Magkano ba ang palit? True / False

3. Sisenta pesos po ang palit. True / False

4. Nagpapalit din ba kayo ng sterling pounds? True / False

5. Pirmahan lang po ninyo ang mga tseke. True / False

### Exercise 7

How do you ask the following in Tagalog?

1. I'd like to change some dollars.

2. What is the exchange rate?

3. The exchange rate is 40 pesos.

4. Do you also exchange Australian dollars?

Use the dialogue and the vocabulary box provided to help you.

### Exercise 8



Listening and understanding

A common form of recreation for Filipino men is cockfighting. Many men rear and train fighting cocks in the hope of winning prestige and of course, making money. Let us now join a group of men at a 'sabungan' (cockfighting pit).

- 1. How much money are they betting on the red fighting cock? ('sa pula')?
- 2. How much are they betting on the white fighting cock ('sa puti')?

#### One-minute phrases

Atik (ah-teek) Street word for pera, money. Someone who has a lot of money is maatik.

Perahin na lang (peh-rah-heen nah lahng) Literally, just to make into money, meaning just give cash/money instead of goods etc.

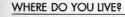
Nakatuntong sa numero (nah-kah-toon-tawng sah noo-mehraw) Literally, stepping on numbers. This Tagalog expression is used to refer to someone who is constantly subject to scrutiny, making him/her feel uneasy. A person who has to constantly watch his/her ps and qs.

Isang katutak (ee-sahng kah-too-tahk) Literally, One/a load of/more than plenty. This phrase is used in connection with surplus or abundance. For example: Isang katutak ang pagkain sa pinggan ko! I've got plenty of food on my plate!

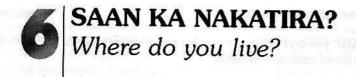
**Nagmimiron** (nahg-mee-mee-rawn) Derived from the verb **nagmamayroon** meaning pretending to possess something. This phrase is often used in connection with a person who is seen to be 'showing off' or 'bragging', or for someone who is ogling.

### Cultural tip

As in so many countries around the world, prices often increase when the shopkeeper, vendor or salesperson sees that the customer is a foreigner. Be patient with this. Don't be afraid to try out your Tagalog, even if they speak back to you in broken English. You will find that with a smile and even a little Tagalog, the price will go down. Don't be afraid to haggle in the markets and in small stores. Don't try to haggle in big stores as prices there are fixed.

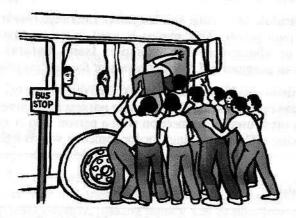


#### 77



### In this unit you will learn how to

- use the question word saan
- follow directions





## Using the question word saan



### Dialogue 1

Roy Cook is waiting at a bus stop. He's off to Makati, the heart of the business and commercial district of Manila. While waiting, Roy notices his old friend Manny and strikes up a conversation with him.

Roy O, ano Manny, kumusta ka?

Manny Roy, ikaw ba talaga? Bakasyon ka ba?

Ako nga. Oo kasama ko ang mga magulang ko. Rov

Manny Saan ang punta mo? Roy Sa Makati Mega Mall lang kasi masyadong mainit

ngayon.

Manny Doon din ang punta ko. Sabay na tayo. Roy Mabuti. Saan kayo nakatira ngayon? Manny Sa Sikatuna Village, malapit sa Diliman.

Roy Saan sa Sikatuna Village? May kilala ako doon.

Manny Sa may simbahang Katoliko, numero uno, tres, otso.

Vocabulary

Pumunta ka sa bahay ha? Heto ang mapa.

Salamat. O, Makati na pala ito!!! Rov

#### Talasalitaan

ikaw ba talaga is it really you?

in /on/ at/ in the/ on the/ at the

bakasyon ka ba are you on vacation? indeed/ it's true nga

kasama ko I'm with mga magulang ko my parents where (direction) ang punta mo your destination masyadong mainit too/very/quite hot

now/today ngayon doon there

din also/ too/ as well

do it together/ at the same time sabay na nakatira

living / residence may kilala ako I know someone

sa may near simbahan church numero number uno, tres, otso one, three, eight

you go / you visit / stop by pumunta ka

sa bahay at my place ang mapa the map

Makati na pala ito ah, we've arrived in Makati already (literally; so this is Makati already)

#### Translation

Roy Hey, Manny, how are you?

Manny Roy, is it really you? Are you on vacation?

Roy I am indeed. I'm with my parents.

Manny Where are you going?

Roy To Makati Mega Mall because it's so hot today.

Manny I'm also going there. Let's go together.
Roy Good. Where are you living now?
Manny At Sikatuna Village, near to Diliman.

Roy Where in Sikatuna Village? I know someone there.

Manny Near the Catholic Church, number one, three, eight (Why

not) Stop by the house? Here's the map.

Roy Thanks. Ah, we've arrived in Makati already!

### Language skills

### 1 Saan? Where?

In Dialogue 1, Roy Cook introduces us to a new question word: saan or 'where'. He asks Manny: 'Saan ang punta mo? (Where are you going?). 'Saan kayo nakatira? (Where do you live?) Be careful not to confuse saan with the question word nasaan we first met in Unit 4. Although both saan and nasaan can be translated into English as 'where', both question words perform different functions in Tagalog and so need to be addressed separately.

Saan has two major uses: 1) it represents the place where the action expressed in a sentence occurs. For example: Saan ka bumili ng selyo? (Where did you buy stamps?); 2) it represents a continuing condition. Example: Saan ka nakaupo? (Where are you seated?) When using saan as a question word, the reply should begin with 'sa' followed by the place where the action occurred in the sentence.

In summary, the difference between **nasaan** and **saan** is quite simple: whereas both questions may refer to location ('where?'), only **saan** questions refer to either the *place of action*, or to *a continuing condition*. For example: **Nasaan** si Richard? Where [location] is Richard? **Saan** matutulog si Richard? Where will

Richard sleep [action]? Don't worry if this sounds a bit heavy going. It will soon become clear to you. Study the following examples and then re-read the explanation.

### Examples:

1. Tagalog: Saan tayo kakain?
Literal: Where we will eat?

English: Where are we going to eat?

Reply: Sa Dad's (At Dad's)

2. Tagalog: Saan ka nagpagupit?

Literal: Where you have a haircut? English: Where did you have a haircut?

Reply: Sa Rudy's Barber Shop (At Rudy's Barber Shop)

3. Tagalog: Saan sila matutulog?
Literal: Where they will sleep?
English: Where will they sleep?
Reply: Sa bahay ko (At my house)

4. Tagalog:
Literal:
Where will study Tessie?
Where will Tessie study?
Reply:
Sa St Paul's (At St Paul's)

5. Tagalog: Saan nakahiga ang bata?
Literal: Where lying down the child?
English: Where is the child lying down?

Reply: Sa kama (On the bed)

6. Tagalog: Saan sila nakatayo?
Literal: Where they standing?
English: Where are they standing?
Reply: Sa harapan (At the front)

7. Tagalog: Saan naupo ang babae?
Literal: Where sat the woman?
English: Where did the woman sit?

Reply: Sa bagong silya (On the new chair)

8. Tagalog:
Literal:
English:
Reply:
Saan bumili ng sorbetes ang mga bata?
Where bought ice cream the children?
Where did the children buy ice cream?
Sa Ben & Jerry's (At Ben & Jerry's)

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
kakain	will eat
nagpagupit	had a haircut
matutulog	will sleep
mag-aaral	will study
nakahiga	lying down
nakatayo	standing
naupo	sat
bumili	bought
sorbetes	ice cream

### Exercise 1

Listen to Dialogue 1 again and follow the conversation on page 76. You will notice that the dialogue has been repeated for a second time on the tape, but this time, Manny's voice has been omitted. Using the text provided, why not try out the role of Manny.

#### Exercise 2

1 nakatira / cila / coon

Here are some sentences with the word jumbled up. Can you put the words back into the correct order to make a good saan sentence? Use the explanation and examples to guide you.

210	Answer:
	Translation: Where do they live?
2.	kayo / matutulog / saan. Answer:
	Translation: Where will you sleep?
3.	Nag-aaral / saan / sina Lucy. Answer:
	Translation: Where do Lucy and her friends study?
١.	bumibili / saan / po kayo/ ng sorbetes. Answer:
	Translation: Where do you buy ice cream? (formal)
	Si Adam / kakain / saan / ng almusal.

Translation: Where will Adam eat breakfast?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
nag-aaral	studying/study	
bumibili	buying/buy	

### 🖪 Finding an address on a map

### Dialogue 2

Roy decided to call Manny on the telephone. Manny is giving Roy instructions on how to get to his house.

Roy Hello Manny, si Roy ito.

Manny Kumusta Roy, pupunta ka ba rito?

Roy Oo, pero pakiulit mo nga ang tirahan mo. Hindi ba

masyadong malayo iyan?

Manny Okey lang. Masyadong malapit nga eh! Tingnan mo ang

mapa. Nakikita mo ba ang simbahang Katoliko?

Roy Oo. Nasa Kalye Vito ito.

Manny Una, bumaba ka sa McDonald's. Iyan ay Kalye Sanchez.

Dumiretso ka buhat sa McDonald's. Nakikita mo ba ang

Kalye Roxas?

Roy Oo.

Manny Tumawid ka doon - iyan ang kalye namin, Kalye Simeon.

Kami ay numero uno, tres, otso. May kasama ka ba?

Roy Wala. Nag-iisa ako. Hintayin mo ako.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
pupunta ka ba	are you going to
pakiulit mo nga	please repeat
tirahan	residence/ address
nakikita mo	you see/ you are seeing
Katoliko	Catholic
una	first
bumaba ka	you alight/ get off
iyan	that
kalye namin	our street
kami ay	we are
kasama	companion
nag-iisa	alone
hintayin mo ako	wait for me

#### **Translation**

Hello Manny, this is Roy. Rov

Manny How are you Roy, are you coming over?

Yes, but can you repeat your address for me? Isn't it very Roy far?

Manny It's ok. In fact it's quite near. Look at the map. Can you see a Catholic church?

Roy Yes, it is along Vito Street.

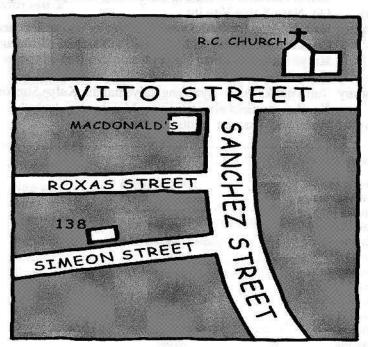
Manny First, get off at McDonald's. That is Sanchez Street. From McDonald's walk straight ahead. Can you see Roxas Street?

Yes. Roy

Manny Cross there. That's our street, Simeon Street

We are (Our house is) number one three eight. Do you have somebody with you? (Literally, do you have a companion?)

No, I'm alone. Wait for me. Roy



#### More useful words

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
plaza	town square
ospital	hospital
munisipyo	municipal offices
kapitolyong panglalawigan	provincial capital
korte	court
istasyon ng pulis	police station
sementeryo	cemetery
Bulwagang Pambarangay	Barangay Hall
palengke	market
LRT	light rail transit

### Exercise 3

Fill in the right word using a word from the box.

ka mapa nakikita bahay kasama 1. Pupunta \_\_\_\_ ba sa hotel? 2. Sa Kalye Simeon ang \_\_\_\_\_ namin. 3. Saan sa \_\_\_\_ ang simbahang Katoliko? 4. mo ba ang McDonald's? 5. Sino ang \_\_\_\_\_ mo?

#### Exercise 4

Match up the question with the correct answer:

Ouestion Answer 1. Masyadong malayo ba ang a. Walang kasama si Roy tirahan ni Manny? b. Nasa Kalye Vito ito. 2. Saan nakatira si Manny?

3. Saan dapat tumawid si Manny? c. Sa Sikatuna Village.

4. May kasama ba si Roy? d. Hindi. Masyadong malapit ito. e. Sa Kalye Roxas. 5. Nasaan ang simbahang

Katoliko?

### **Tanguage** skills

### 2 Masyado So, very, quite, too, etc.

Remember the adjectives (describing words) you met on page 55? Well, the good news is that there are some interesting ways of 'spicing up' your adjectives with small words such as too, quite, very, so, etc. These small words are known as 'adverbs'. You can spot them easily because in addition to being small, they always go in front of the adjective. For example, quite (adverb) + handsome (adjective) = quite handsome; so (adverb) + hot (adjective) = so hot, etc. Adverbs give additional information about adjectives. This means that if you want to give extra impact to your adjectives, you need to use an adverb or adverbs. In Tagalog, adverbs such as so, very, quite, too are represented by a single word: 'masyado'. Adverbs work in Tagalog in just about the same way as they do in English. As with English adverbs (e.g. 'quite'), masyado can appear on its own. However, when masyado is used in connection with an adjective, it is placed before the adjective. In order to help the sentence flow better, 'ng' is attached to the end of the word 'masyado'. For example: masyado + ng (very) + marumi (dirty) = masyadong marumi (very dirty); masyadong mataas (too high), masyadong mahaba (very long) and so on. Of course, there are other kinds of adverbs but we will deal with those as they come along.

Here are some examples of adverb + adjective combinations:

ng	+ adjectiv	e =	Combination	English
+	malaki	=	masyadong malaki	very big
+	malamig	-		too cold
+	mabilis	=		so fast
+	mainit	=		very hot
+	madaldal	=		very talkative
+	mataas	=		quite high
+	madilim	=	The state of the s	very dark
+	malakas	=	masyadong malakas	quite loud,
+	mahina	-	masyadong mahina	very strong too soft (volume), very weak
	++++++	+ malaki + malamig + mabilis + mainit + madaldal + mataas + madilim + malakas	+ malamig = + mabilis = + mainit = + madaldal = + mataas = + madilim = + malakas =	+ malaki = masyadong malaki + malamig = masyadong malamig + mabilis = masyadong mabilis + mainit = masyadong mainit + madaldal = masyadong madaldal + mataas = masyadong mataas + madilim = masyadong madilim + malakas = masyadong malakas

Masyadong + mahaba = masyadong mahaba too slow

Masyadong + mahaba = masyadong mahaba quite long

### Exercise 5 Sentence building

Can you fill in the spaces with the right word combination words that you can find in the box?

Nasa eropla	no si Ph	nil at si	Tina.				sila sa
Pilipinas				(40	c)	sa	Pilipinas
pero door	ı sila	magba	abaka	syon.	50 II		
d	aw ang l	Pilipinas	(17,0	00 m	ilya		याची पुरस्क द्वारती
Heathrow).				ay	2000		
	na.	Sabi	na				

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
masyadong mainit	very hot	
masyadong mataas	quite high	
kapitan ng eroplano	captain of the airplane	
magbabakasyon	will go on vacation	
ang dating	time of arrival	
masyadong malayo	quite far	
buhat sa	from	



### Finding the right Jeepney/bus

### Dialogue 3

Roy has decided to take a Jeepney to Manny's place. There are many Jeepneys in Manila so Roy wants to make sure that he gets on the right one.

Roy Papunta ba ito sa Sikatuna Village?

Drayber Opo. Saan po ba doon?

Roy Sa McDonald's sa Kalye Sanchez.

Drayber OK po, hihinto ito sa McDonald's.

Roy Magkano ang pamasahe hanggang sa Sikatuna?

Drayber Dos singkwenta lang po.

Heto ang bayad. Pakipara mo sa Kalye Sanchez ha? Roy

Drayber Opo.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
papunta ba ito sa saan po ba	is this going to where sir?	
hihinto ito	this will stop	
ang pamasahe	the fare	
hanggang sa	until	
dos singkewenta	2.50 pesos	10.
heto ang bayad ko	here's my fare	wei o'n beel
pakipara mo	please stop at	

#### Translation

Roy Is this going to Sikatuna Village?

Driver Yes sir, where (in Sikatuna Village)?

Roy McDonald's on Sanchez Street

Driver OK sir, we will be stopping there. (literally, this will

stop)

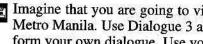
How much is the fare to Sikatuna Village? Roy

Driver It's 2.50 pesos sir.

Roy Here's my fare. Please stop at Sanchez Street, OK?

Driver Yes sir.

### Exercise 6



Imagine that you are going to visit a friend in the Diliman area of Metro Manila. Use Dialogue 3 and the vocabulary box to help you form your own dialogue. Use your tape to make the exercise more realistic and more fun:

Ikaw	n see ingering un subject - a	
Drayber Ikaw	Opo. Saan po ba doon?	a upoking to make
Drayber	Okay po, hihinto ito sa	- 20 All June 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19

Ikaw	NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY.	ha	nggang sa_	Total Res	edify-	
The Property of the second second	Tres singkwenta lang po.					
Ikaw Drayber	Opo.		HE SALE	on a		

#### One-minute phrases

Kilala ko siya (kee-lah-lah kaw see-yah) Literally, I know him/her. This expression is used to mean that a person knows 'of' someone (has heard of them/shook hands with them or they have been introduced to each other). The expression does not necessarily mean that they know the person as a friend or acquaintance. For example: Kilala niya ang asawa ng gobernador. He/she knows the governor's wife/husband.

Do not mistake the above with

Kakilala ko siya (kah-kee-lah-lah kaw-see-yah) Literally He/she is an acquaintance. For example: Kakilala ko si Bobbie Rodero. Bobbie Rodero is my acquaintance.

Matalik na kaibigan (mah-tah-leek nah kah-ee-bee gahn) Meaning best friend. For example: Matalik na kaibigan ko si Jun Terra. Jun Terra is my best friend.

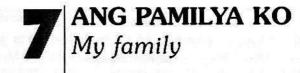
Mabilis magpatakbo (mah-bee-lees mahg-pah-tahk-boo) Literally, fast to run a vehicle. Meaning: a fast driver. For example: Mabilis magpatakbo ang aming drayber kaya maaga kaming nakarating sa paliparan. Ours was a fast driver so we arrived at the airport early.

Huling biyahe (hoo-leeng bee-yah-heeh) Meaning: last trip. For example: Anong oras ang huling biyahe ninyo papunta sa Calapan? What time is your last trip to Calapan?

### (i) Cultural tip

The Jeepney is a mode of transport unique to the Philippines. Originally modelled on the US army Jeep, it has since been transformed into the most common form of public transport on Philippine roads. Jeepneys are easily identifiable by their typically colourful and lavish decoration. They are probably the cheapest means of transport available, although not always the most comfortable! If you wish to ride on a jeepney, don't forget that there are few official 'stopping' places and so you will have to inform the driver when and where you want to get off.

Destinations and routes are usually written on both the front and the side of the Jeepney. You can hail Jeepneys in most places except on main roads where stricter traffic regulations apply. If in doubt, ask a local!



### In this unit you will learn how to

- introduce the members of your family
- use ay in a sentence
- use possessive pronouns

### Introducing the members of your family

### Dialogue 1

At the Abiva house, Tita Abiva is showing her family album to Bill and Louise Cook.



- Tita Ito ay larawan ng pamilya ko. Sa likuran, buhat sa *kaliwa* ay si Tatay, si ate Azon at si Jake ang asawa niya, si Edith ang asawa ni Jose, si Louie ang asawa ni Citta, at ito ay si Nanay.
- Bill Ang mga nasa harapan?
- Tita Ang mga nasa harapan, buhat sa *kaliwa* ay si Ely walang asawa, si Dino na katabi ko ay binata at *pinakabunso* sa pamilya namin, at ito si Toto ang asawa ko.
- Bill Malaki-laki ang pamilya ninyo.
- Tita Oo, pero ang malaking pamilya ay masayang pamilya.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
pinakabunso	youngest	
larawan	photograph/picture	
ng pamilya ko	of my family	
sa likuran	behind/at the back	
ang pamilya ninyo	your family	
tatay	father	
asawa	spouse	
pero	but	
ang asawa niya	her/his partner	
binata	bachelor	
na katabi ko	(who's) next to me	
katabi ni	next to	
nasa likuran	at the back	
ng pamilya namin	of our family	
ang asawa ko	my partner	
malaki-laki	quite big	
ate	elder sister	
harapan	front	
malaking pamilya	big family	
kapag	if/when	
masayang pamilya	happy family	
nasa harapan	in front	

#### Translation

**Tita** This is a photograph of my family. At the back, from the left that is (my) father, (my) older sister Azon and her husband Jake, Edith the wife of Jose, Louie, the husband of Citta and this is (my) mother.

Bill [and] Those in the front?

**Tita** The ones in front, from the left are Ely who is unmarried, Dino (who is) seated next to me, (he) is a bachelor and the youngest in our family, and this is Toto my husband.

Bill Your family is quite big.

Tita Yes, but a big family is a happy family.



#### Exercise 1

Look at the picture of the Abiva family on page 89. Imagine that Tita Abiva has asked **you** to explain to the Cooks 'who is who' in the picture. Remember, your answer should begin with 'nasa' as you will need to show the *location* of the person. In your answers, use the words from the box. The dialogue and vocabulary box may also be of help to you.

nasa likuran kaliwa katabi ni nasa harapan kanan

#### Example: Tatay. Answer: Nasa likuran, sa kaliwa.

1. Si Ate Azon at si Jake.	Answe
2. Si Ely.	Answe
3. Si Tita.	Answer
4. Si Citta.	Answe
5. Si Toto.	Answer
6. Si Dino.	Answe

#### The Filipino family tree

Tagalog	Pronunciation	English
nanay/inay	nah-nigh/ee-nigh	mother
tatay/itay	tah-tigh/ee-tigh	father
ate	ah-te	older sister
kuya	koo-yah	older brother
kapatid	kah-pah-teed	sibling
kapatid na lalaki	kah-pah teed nah lah-lah-kee	brother
kapatad na babae	kah-pah teed nah bah-bah-ee	sister
tiyo	tee-yaw	uncle
tiya	tee-yah	aunt
lolo	law-law	grandfather
lola	law-lah	grandmother
apo	ah-paw	grandcild
bayaw	bah-yao	brother-in-law
hipag	hee-pahg	sister-in-law
pamangkin	pah-mahng-keen	nephew/niece
asawa	ah-sah-wah	husband/wife

### **& Language skills**

#### 1 Ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila Possessive pronouns

If you look closely at Dialogue 1, you will notice that the words ko (my), niya (his her) and namin (our) have one thing in common: they express ownership or possession. These words are known as possessive pronouns. Possessive pronouns are used in two basic ways: 1) they tell us about ownership, i.e. 'ang pasaporte ko' (my passport), 'ang guro namin' (our teacher), 2) they show relationship with a person, i.e., 'ang nanay ko' (my mother), 'ang tatay namin' (our father). You will notice that in English the possessive pronoun goes in front of the thing (noun) it possesses. For example: your name, his house, my father, our country and so on. In Tagalog, the order is reversed with the possessive pronoun being placed after the word it possesses. For example: pangalan mo (your name), bahay niya (his house), tatay ko (my father), bansa natin (our country) and so on. One small but important difference to watch out for is the first person plural. In English, we simply say 'our house', 'our street', 'our village'. Tagalog has two possibilities: one which includes the listener (natin), and another which excludes the listener (namin). For example, if I were to speak to you about 'tatay natin' or 'our father', then the use of the inclusive form (natin) makes it clear that he is also your father. If however I talk about 'tatay namin', then the use of the exclusive form (namin) indicates that he is 'our' father (me, my brothers and sisters) while not implying that he is also your father. Look at the following table:

#### Personal possessive pronouns:

Number	English	Tagalog
1st person (singular)	my	ko
(plural)	our	namin (exclusive of listener/s
	our	natin (inclusive of listener/s)
2nd person (singular)	your	mo
(plural)	your	ninyo
3rd person (singular)	his/her	niya
(plural)	their	nila

Here are some example sentences:

#### English

1. He/she is my friend.

2. Is he your driver?3. We are their guest.

4. Cora is our teacher.

5. Are you his friend?

#### Tagalog

Kaibigan ko siya Drayber mo ba siya?

Bisita nila kami

Guro namin si Cora Kaibigan ka ba niya?

### Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences, using the vocabulary box to help you:

- 1. Margaret is my friend.
- 2. John is his brother.
- 3. Ann is their visitor.
- 4. They are my classmates.

#### **Exercise 3 Listening**

guest
classmates
teacher



Listen carefully to the accompanying exercise, then look at the pictures. Can you tell who is related to whom?

1.



2



3



4.



### **Language** skills

#### 2 Ng Of/of the Ni/nina + Name of person/s

Another new word used in Dialogue was 'ng' (pronounced nang). Ng is also used to show possession. For example: 'ang laruan ng bata' (literally, the toy of the child = the child's toy), 'baso ng tubig' (a glass of water), 'ang pintuan ng bahay' (the doorway of the house). These examples show that ng can be translated into English as 'of' or 'of the'. Try to remember, however, that in English, the word of often disappears completely and is replaced by an apostrophe + 's For example, 'the mother of the bride' becomes 'the bride's mother', 'the book of the student' becomes 'the student's book'. When using a person's name, however, we use the word ni instead of ng, indicating that the person concerned is the possessor. For example, 'Ito ang bahay ni Mary' (this is Mary's house). If more than one person is involved, then nina is used (the plural of ni). For example: 'Ka-opisina siya nina Tony'. He is an officemate of Tony and his friend/s.

### Look at the following examples:

Tagalog	English
ni Jose	of Jose/ Jose's
nina Jose	of Jose and his friend/s'
ni Mary	of Mary/ Mary's
nina Mary	of Mary and her friend/s'
ng bata	of the child / the child's
ng mga babae	of the women/ the women's
ng Presidente	of the President/
my and the first transfer with	the President's
ni Queen Elizabeth	of Queen Elizabeth/
	Queen Elizabeth's

Here are some full sentences to show this expression in use.

- 1. Anak ni Queen Elizabeth si Prince Charles.

  Prince Charles is the son of Queen Elizabeth.
- 2. Kotse **ng** Presidente ito.

  This is the car of the President.
- 3. Doktor **ni** Bennie si Doktor Cruz. Doctor Cruz is Bennie's doctor.
- 4. Maleta **ng** mga babae iyan. That is the women's suitcase.

### Exercise 4

Fill in the blank with the correct word. Refer to the Language skills on pages 94–5.

1.	Kailangan mo ba	(ng/ni) tulong ko?
2.	Hindi	(namin/nina) alam ang tirahan ni Phil.
3.	Anak	(ni/ng) ginoong Abiva si Jobert.
4.	Sino ang kapatid	(ng/ng mga) guro?
5.	Gusto	(ko/nina) ang bagong kotse mo.
6.	Nasa mesa ang pa	gkain(ng/ni) mga bisita
7.	Bukas narito ano	

### (

### Exercise 5

Look at the pictures and write a sentence about each using either ng, ni or nina.



### 6,

### Using 'ay' in a sentence



### Dialogue 2

At the Abiva house, Bill, Louise and Tita continue their conversation.

Louise Ilan ang anak ninyo?

Tita Lima. Isa lang ang walang asawa. Heto ang larawan

ng mga anak at mga apo ko.

Louise Sila ay magaganda.

Tita Kayo, ilan ang anak ninyo? Louise Dalawa lang. Si John at si Roy. Tita May anak ba si John?

Bill Oo. Dalawa. Si Adam at si Lucy.

Tita Maliit ang pamilya ninyo!

Louise Oo nga.

Katulong Eto po ang pampalamig.

Tita Salamat. Tayo ay magpalamig muna.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ilan	how many
ang anak ninyo	your child
lima sila	there are five
isa lang	only one
walang asawa	not married
ng mga anak	of the children
pampalamig	refreshment
mga apo ko	my grandchildren
dalawa lang	only two
anak ninyo	your children
pamilya ninyo	your family
oo nga	I agree
eto po	here you are
magpalamig muna	have some refreshments first

#### **Translation**

Louise How many children do you have?

Tita Five. Only one is not (yet) married. Here is a photo of

my children and my grandchildren.

Louise They are beautiful.

Tita How many children do you have? (literally, and you,

how many children do you have?)

LouiseJust two. John and Roy.TitaDoes John have children?BillYes. Two. Adam and Lucy.TitaYour family is small!

Louise I agree.

Maid Here is your refreshment ma'am!

Tita Thank you. Let's have something to drink first

(literally, refreshments).

### Exercise 6

Donna

Read the following story. You will notice that several words are missing from the Tagalog dialogue. Using the vocabulary box provided, fill in the missing words. Use the English translation to help you.

Magandang araw po. Kumusta po kayo? Si Donna po

#### Donna visits Chit's family in Batangas

	ako. ako ni Chit.
Host	ako ako ni Chit. Ikaw ba si Donna? Pasok ka ka pala.
	Ilan kayong?
Donna	Tatlo po. Ako, ang, si Eloisa ang
	pangalawa, at si Mila, ang Lahat
	po kami walang asawa.
Host	Ganoon ba? Kumusta ang mga magulang mo?
Donna	Mabuti po naman sila. Kayo po, ilan po ang?
Host	Apat ang
Donna	ang may asawa?
Host	Isa lang Si Zeny at dalawa na Magpalamig ka
	muna.
Donna	Maraming salamat po. Ang sarap nito! Kung gayon may na pala kayo.
Host	Oo at maligaya naman ako!
Donna	Mabuti naman at nakilala ko kayo sa wakas.
Host	Ako rin!
Transla	tion a profit guille of patenti
Donna	Good morning (polite). How are you? I am Donna – Chit's friend.
Host	Are you Donna? Ah, please come in! You are indeed tall!
	How many brothers and sisters do you have?
Donna	Three ma'am. I'm the eldest, Eloisa the second and Mila
	is the youngest. We are all still single.
Host	I see. And how are your parents?

They are fine ma'am. And how about you ma'am, how

many children do vou have?

Host I have four children.

Are any of them married yet? Donna

Host Only one so far. Zeny. She has two children. Please have

some refreshment.

Thank you. This is delicious! So, you now have Donna

grandchildren!

Yes, and I am very happy about that! Host

It is so nice to meet you at last. Donna

Host You too!

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
pinakabunso	youngest	
matangkad	tall	
magkakapatid	siblings	
apo	grandchild	
pinakamatanda	eldest	
ang anak niya	her children	
ang may-asawa	(the) married (one)	
anak ko	my children	
ilan	how many	

### Exercise 7

Which question matches which answer?

1. Anak mo ba siya?

A. Oo. Asawa yata ni Azon si Jake.

2. Nasa silangan ng Pilipinas ang Davao.

B. Kuya.

3. Ano ang tawag sa matandang kapatid na lalaki?

C. Hindi. Sa tindahan tayo bumibili ng selyo.

4. Asawa kaya ni Azon si Jake?

D. Hindi. Hindi ko siya anak.

5. Sa ospital tayo bumibili ng selvo.

E. Wala. Nasa Timog ito.

### (J

### Exercise 8 Speaking and listening activity

Listen to the dialogue on the tape. How many of the words or phrases from the conversation between Pepot and Donna can you remember? Listen to the tape again. Here are some snatches from the dialogue. Fill in the missing parts. When you have completed the task, why not ask one of your Filipino friends to help you act out the dialogue?

O, tuloy ba kina
Peps? (our picnic)
Sino ba ang ?
(older of the two?)
ang tanda ni Romy kay Peps. (three
years)
si Peps. (younger)
ng anak ni Romy. (what
is the name)
(Don't you
know?)
Oo
(she is my mother's sister).
Bibili ako
(some cold drinks)
Sa palagay ko, magiging masaya
(this picnic).

### **Tanguage** skills

### 3 Ay

Life and language would seem rather boring if we had only one set way of communicating correctly with one another. Fortunately, we can vary sentences in order to add spice, variety and colour to our language. For example, 'Hello Bob, how are you this morning?' becomes 'Morning Bob, how are you?' or perhaps 'How are you this morning, Bob?'. All of these simple sentences communicate the same message, but all are slightly different. Tagalog does much the same thing with the simple word ay (pronounced eye). This little word has no direct English translation but is a veritable gold

nugget when it comes to adding variety to our spoken Tagalog. The good news for English speakers is that the word ay follows the normal English language sentence structure. It inverts the usual sequence of Tagalog words making it resemble its English equivalent. For example, he is good (mabuti siva) becomes siva av mabuti. You may be forgiven for thinking that ay means 'is' or that ay is the equivalent of the English verb 'to be', but this is not so. A sentence involving the use of ay does not differ in meaning from the sentence without av. It simply offers variety and assists the flow of the sentence. Ay can also be used as a more formal style and as such is commonly found in writing, lectures, sermons and so on, although this is only used after vowels. You will no doubt have noticed the use of ay in Dialogue 1, together with the shortened form of 'v. Both forms are correct. You will notice that the shortened 'y form is most commonly used when following words which end with a vowel. This is not always the case however. For example: Ito'y maganda, This is pretty. Ikaw'y guro, You are a teacher.

Here are some more examples.

English	Tagalog	Inverted (ay sentence)
They are Americans	Amerikano sila	Sila ay Amerikano
The queue is long	Mahaba ang pila	Ang pila ay mahaba
Is the chair clean?	Malinis ba ang silya?	Ang silya ba ay malinis?
Ann is industrious	Masipag si Ann.	Si Ann ay masipag
They are nurses	Mga narses sila.	Sila'y mga narses
The vegetable is fresh	Sariwa ang gulay	Ang gulay ay sariwa.
The mango is sour	Maasim ang mangga	Ang mangga'y maasim
The car is at the garage	Nasa garahe ang kotse	Ang kotse'y nasa garahe
He is a doctor here	Doktor siya dito	Siya ay doktor dito

### V

### Exercise 9

Convert the following standard Tagalog sentences into their equivalent ay form sentences:

- 1. Anak mo siya.
- 2. May tiket ako.
- 3. Malamig ang tubig.
- 4. Mainit ngayon.
- 5. Masarap ang handa mo.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
tiket	ticket	
malamig	cold	
tubig	water	
masarap	delicious	
handa	food preparation	

### One-minute phrases

Maghabol sa tambol mayor (mahg-hah-bawl sah tahm-bawl mah-yor) Literally, to chase the principal drum (of a marching band). This expression is applied to somebody who has been cheated (i.e. in money, relationships, financial deals etc.). The expression implies that the victim has no chance of finding justice. Marching bands are a common sight in the Philippines, especially during fiestas, funerals and weddings. To chase the principal drum, as the saying goes, takes some doing, as it is a heavy instrument to run away with! The phrase is similar in meaning to the English expressions, caught napping or caught with his pants down!

Mukhang Biyernes Santo (mook-hahng beeyer-ness sahn-taw) Literally, a face like Good Friday! This expression is applied to a person who looks gloomy. As a Christian country, the Philippines traditionally observes the celebration of Holy Week. Part of Holy Week is the observance of Good Friday, the solemn remembrance of the day Jesus died. Filipinos tend to disapprove of festivities on Good Friday as a sign of respect for the Santo Intiero or Dead Christ. Anyone who wears a solemn expression on their face at other times may find themselves on the receiving end of the comment, Mukhang Biyernes Santo ka! You've got a face like Good Friday!

Parang pinagbiyak na bunga (pah-rahng pee-nahg-bee-yahk nah boo-ngah) Literally, Looks like a fruit chopped in two. When a piece of fruit is chopped into two halves, the two halves are generally identical. This expression is commonly used therefore to refer to twins.

Kaibigang matalik/matalik na kaibigan (kah-ee-bee-gahng mah-tah-leek/mah-tah-leek na kah-ee-bee-gahn) a term which means best friend.

Kasa-kasama (kah-sah-kah-sah-mah) This expression is used to identify a person commonly seen with another person. For example: Laging kasa-kasama ni Jun si Bobbie. Bobbie is always seen in Jun's company.

### (i) Cultural tip

When meeting the family of a Filipino friend for the first time do not be surprised if they appear to be more 'formal' than relaxed with you. This is normal. Many Filipinos often feel initimidated by foreigners, but as they gradually get to know you, they will begin to feel more relaxed. Don't be afraid to try out your Tagalog, even if you make mistakes. They will appreciate your efforts and will warm to you more quickly.

# 8 SA RESTAWRAN At the restaurant

### In this unit you will learn how to

- order your drinks
- choose some typical Filipino food
- ask for your bill
- make words plural using 'mga'

### Ordering your drinks

### Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy have decided to eat dinner at the local Kamayan restaurant.

Waiter Magandang gabi po. Maligayang pagdating sa 'Kamayan'.

Bill May mesa ba kayo para sa tatlo?

Waiter Mayroon po. Heto po ang mesa ninyo.

Bill Salamat. (Naupo ang mag-anak)

Waiter Sir, heto po ang menu namin. Ano po ang gusto ninyong

inumin?

Bill Sandali lang. Louise?

Louise Malamig na tubig lang muna. May mineral water ba

kayo?

Waiter Mayroon po. Kayo po sir?

Bill San Miguel beer.

Waiter (kay Roy) Sa inyo po, sir? Roy White wine ang sa akin.

Waiter Okey po. Pulutan sir, Ibig po ba ninyo.

Bill Oo. Ano ang pulutan ninyo?

Waiter Tapa at litson po. Isang plato o isang platito po?

Bill Parang masarap. O sige. Isang plato. Salamat. Waiter Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
maligayang pagdating	welcome
may mesa ba kayo	do you have a table
para sa tatlo	for three
malamig na tubig	cold water
ang mesa ninyo	your table
ang menu namin	our menu
ang gusto ninyo	what you like
platito	saucer
muna	first/for the time being
parang	seems/like
kay	to (+ name)
ang sa akin	mine
pulutan	finger food to go with drinks
tapa	sliced fried beef
litson	suckling pig
plato	plate

#### Translation

Waiter Good evening sir. Welcome to Kamayan.

Bill Do you have a table for three?
Waiter Yes sir. Here is your table, sir.
Bill Thank you. (The family sits down)

Waiter Sir, here's our menu. What would you like to drink?

Bill Just one moment. (You) Louise?

Louise I'll have cold water (for the time being). Do you have any

mineral water?

Waiter Yes, we have ma'am. And you sir?

Bill San Miguel beer.
Waiter (to Roy) And you, sir?
Roy I'll have a white wine.

Waiter OK sir. Finger foods (to go with the drinks) sir, would

you like some?

Bill Yes. What are your pulutan?

Waiter Sliced fried beef and suckling pig sir. One plate sir, or

one saucer?

Bill Seems delicious. OK, one plate (of finger foods). Thank

you.

Waiter You're welcome sir.

### Exercise 1

Can you say the following?

- 1. There are four of us. (We are four)
- 2. Do you have a table for four persons?
- 3. I want (a glass of) cold water.
- 4. I would like (a bottle of) San Miguel beer.
- 5. Do you have a big table?

### Exercise 2

Look at Dialogue 1 again. Based on this dialogue, can you tell which of the following sentences are true and which are false?

- 1. Para sa dalawa ang mesa.
- 2. Ang mesa ay para sa tatlo.
- 3. Mabuti para kay Louise ang malamig na tubig.
- 4. Gusto ni Louise ng malamig na beer.
- 5. Hindi gusto ni Bill ang inumin.
- 6. San Miguel Beer yata ang gusto ni Bill.

### Language skills

### 1 Mga Making words plural

Dialogue 1 introduced us to the word 'mga' (pronounced mahngah). In jargon, this word is known as a pluraliser. A pluraliser is a word which lets us know that more than one person, place or thing is being referred to. In English, there are three basic ways of indicating the plural: 1) by adding the letter 's' to the end of the pluralised word. Hence, suitcase becomes 'suitcases'; 2) by changing a single letter in the pluralised word. Here, woman becomes women; 3) by adding 'es' to the pluralised word. Here, mango becomes mangoes. Tagalog has a far less complex way of making words plural. Simply add the word mga before the noun you wish to pluralise. For example: tiket (ticket) becomes mga tiket (tickets); babae (woman) becomes mga babae (women);

Pilipino (Filipino) becomes mga Pilipino (Filipinos). What could be easier?!

#### Exercise 3

Find the correct Tagalog words for the following and then pluralise them.



#### Did you know ...?

Sometimes Tagalog will pluralise adjectives, too. For example mabuti (good) can become mabubuti, malaki (big) can become malalaki. Here the mga pluraliser is dropped in favour of repeating the second syllable of the word. In this type of sentence the plural adjective must always precede a plural noun or pronoun. For example: maliit siya — maliliit sila. Don't worry if this seems to complicated for you at this time — you can come back to it later when you feel more confident. Just stick to the mga form for the moment.

### Exerc

#### Exercise 4

Using the vocabulary box provided arrange the following muddled up words into correct Tagalog sentences.

- 1. bisita/ sa bahay/ na/ mga/ may.
- 2. kayo/ mga/ ba/ estudyante?
- 3. pilipino/ sila/ mga/ hindi.
- 4. kailangan/ ang/ ko/ at mesa /mga silya.
- 5. sariwa/ mga prutas/ na ito/ ang.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
na	already	
estudyante	student	
hindi	no	
kailangan	need	
silya	chair	
sariwa	fresh	
prutas	fruit	

### Choosing some typical Filipino food

#### Dialogue 2

The Cook family are ready to order. The waiter approaches them.

Waiter Ibig n'yo na po bang umorder?

Bill Oo. Ako, gusto ko ng adobong pusit, mechado at

ginisang gulay. Ikaw, Louise? Ano ang order mo?

Louise Ako, gusto ko ng apritada, sinigang na bangus at kanin. May napili ka na ba, Roy?

Roy Opo. Mukhang masarap ang adobong manok. Gusto ko

rin ng pansit at piniritong lumpiya.

Waiter Ano po ang starter ninyo? Mayroon pong sopas manok o

kaya'y sariwang lumpia.

Bill Sariwang lumpia!

Waiter Sariwang lumpia, sir. Masarap po ang sarsa.

Bill Salamat.

Waiter Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ibig n'yo na	would you like now
umorder	to make your order
sopas manok	chicken soup
adobong pusit	squid adobo
mechado	mechado
ginisang gulay	sauteed vegetables
ano	what
apritada	apritada
sinigang na bangus	fish
kanin	boiled rice
may napili	has selected/chosen
mukhang masarap	seems tasty
abobong manok	chicken adobo
starter ninyo	your starter
o kaya'y	or
sariwa(ng) lumpia	fresh spring rolls
rekomendado	recommended
sarsa	sauce/dressing
gusto ko rin	I also like

#### Translation

XX7 *4	XX7 11	72.00		
Waiter	would	you like t	to order	now?

Bill I would like adobong pusit, michado and sauteed vegetables. (And) You Louise? What would you like to

order?

Louise I would like apritada, sinigang na bangus [fish] and rice.

Have you chosen, Roy?

Roy Yes, mum. The chicken adobo looks tasty. I would also

like noodles and fried lumpia.

Waiter Sir, what would you like for your starter? There is

chicken soup or fresh lumpia.

Bill Fresh lumpia!

Waiter Fresh lumpia sir. The salad dressing is delicious!

Bill Thank you.

Waiter You're welcome.

#### Mang Simeon's Kamayan Restaurant Roxas Boulevard, Manila

Starter:		
Tapang baka	P175.00	
Sopas Manok	₱100.00	
Lumpiang ubod	₱125.00	
Sariwang lumpia	₱125.00	
Ensaladang seafood	₱200.00	
Pansit luglog	₱125.00	
Ulam:		
Adobong manok sa gata	P250.00	
Adobong baboy at baka sa toyo	₱300.00	
Pansit bihon	₱280.00	
Pansit miki	P280.00	
Pansit miki at bihon	P280.00	
Kaldereta	₱300.00	
Sinigang na bangus	₱280.00	
Pritong tilapia	P280.00	
Ginisang pusit	₱300.00	
Menudo	₱200.00	
Sinigang na bakang may saging	P250.00	
Kanin	₱100.00	
Chinese fried rice	P120.00	
Gulay:		
Ginisang munggo	₱65.00	
Chop suey	₱150.00	
Inihaw na talong	₱60.00	
2004	1 00.00	
Pamutat:		
Leche Flan	₱100.00	
Halo-halo	₱150.00	
Sorbetes	₱150.00	
Minatamisang saging na may yelo	₱150.00	
Inumin:		
San Miguel beer	₱35.00	
Soft Drinks	P25.00	
Fruit Shake	₱40.00	
Kape	P25.00	

Service charge not included

#### Exercise 5

Choose from the list of condiments in the box and tell the waiter what you want. Use the dialogue to help you.

Waiter Para sa inihaw na bangus po ba?

You (Clue: ask for some vinegar for your bangus.)

You Bakit, matabang po ba?
(Clue: ask for some salt.)
Waiter Ito po ay para sa ensalada

You (Clue: ask for some sauce/ salad dressing.)

Waiter Ibig po ba ninyo ito para sa pansit?
You (Clue: ask for some soy sauce.)

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
toyo	soy sauce
paminta	pepper
suka	vinegar
sarsa	sauce/salad dressing
asin	salt
ibig po ba ninyo	would you want
gusto ko ng	I would like/I want

### ) Cultural tip

Whether at corner stores or in small (turo-turo) restaurants along the highway, some delicacies are always on the menu and are sure to tickle Filipino taste buds. Here are a few of the most popular dishes:

Leche flan – A sweet dish consisting of evaporated milk, condensed milk, egg yolks, sugar, lemon peel and vanilla essence. Similar in appearance and taste to *crème caramel*. It is always the main attraction on the buffet table at fiestas and celebrations.

Bilobilo – this popular snack is prepared by mixing water and sticky rice flour. The mixture is then shaped into small balls

which in turn are dropped into a pan quarter filled with boiling coconut milk where sugar, shredded jack fruit, pineapple and vanilla have already been added.

Bibingka – Cooked in smouldering coconut husks, bibingka has its own unique taste. It is prepared from rice flour, sugar and the flesh of a young (i.e. unripe) coconut. Bibingka is placed under a smouldering coconut husk until it turns a slightly brownish colour. Sometimes the top of the bibingka is decorated with chopped cheese. Nice to eat when warm, but tends to harden when cold.

Adobong manok – Made by marinating pieces of chicken in vinegar, pepper, garlic, then cooked in coconut milk until tender and aromatic. Seasoned with soy sauce. Served hot as a side dish. Masarap!

### **Tanguage** skills

### 2 Other uses of Mga

Mga is also used in Tagalog to express approximation. When used in connection with numbers, it can be understood to mean 'approximately', 'about' or 'around'.

#### Examples:

Tagalog: Mga apat na kilo ang kailangan ko.

English: I need about 4 kilos.

Tagalog: Mga pito siguro ang darating.

English: Perhaps around seven (people) will be arriving.

Tagalog: Mga isang yarda ang bilhin mo. English: You [need to] buy around one yard.

Mga can also be used when approximating time.

Examples:

Tagalog: Mga alas dos nang hapon ako babalik. English: I'll be back by around 2.00 p.m.

Tagalog: Mga alas onse sila natulog kagabi. English: They slept at about 11.00 last night.

Tagalog: Mga alas sais nang umaga ang simula ng misa.

English: The mass starts at around 6.00 a.m.

### V

### Exercise 6

Complete the following sentences:

1. Gusto ko ng (around 2 kilos) dalanghita.

2. Kailangan namin ng (approximately 3 yards).

3. (Around 2 o'clock) ba ang alis ng bus?4. (Approximately nine) ang mga bisita nila.

5. Siguro (about eight people) are in the Jeepney.

Vocabulary		
I like/want		
oranges		
need		
departure		
perhaps		
	I like/want oranges need departure	I like/want oranges need departure

### Dialogue 3

The Cook family are enjoying their meal, but they would like to order some more food.

Bill Umorder pa tayo ng pansit. Ubos na.
Louise Ubos na rin ang gulay at hipon.
Roy At saka adobong manok. Tubig rin.
(to waiter) Gusto pa namin ng: isang platong pansit, isang platong gulay, isang platong hipon at adobong manok.

Waiter Kanin rin po sir?

Bill Oo. At saka malamig na tubig.

Waiter Opo sir. Salamat po. Walang anuman.

Talasalitaan Vocabulary umorder pa tavo let's order some more ng pansit some noodles ubos na ran out/consumed tubig rin water too gulay at hipon vegetables and prawns at saka and also gusto pa namin ng we want some more isang plato(ng) a plate of gulay vegetables

#### **Translation**

Bill Let's order some more noodles. (There's) Nothing left!

**Louise** No more vegetables and prawns either. **Roy** And chicken adobo too! Water also.

Bill (to waiter) We would like another plate of noodles,

some more vegetables, also prawns and chicken adobo.

Waiter Rice as well sir?

Bill Yes, and some cold water too.

Waiter Yes sir. Thank you. Bill You're welcome.

### Exercise 7

On the tape you can hear people ordering different dishes at a Manila Kamayan restaurant. Did you notice what each person ordered? Look at the waiter's ordering slip. Write down what each person has ordered.

Mang Simeon's Kamaya Roxas Boulevard, I	
Customer 1: Miss Buyco	
Customer 2: Mrs Vito	<u>andina ya ing bangan bang</u> Malahak a <u>ng ang bangan bang</u> Bang dalamanya ang
Customer 3: Miss Guanzon	
Table 14	Waiter Domingo

### Asking for the bill

### Dialogue 4

The Cook family have enjoyed their meal. Bill Cook now wants to pay.

Bill Ang chit nga namin.

Waiter Aba opo. Sandali lang po. (Waiter returns and hands him

the bill)

Bill (Pointing at something) Ano ito?

Waiter Iyan po ang starter ninyo.

Bill Iyan, ano iyan?

Waiter Iyan po ang inumin ninyo.

Bill Ganoon ba? Kasama ba ang service charge dito?

Waiter Hindi po.

Bill O, ano naman ang mga ito?

Waiter Ang mga iyan po ang pulutan ninyo.

Bill Ganoon ba? Okey, mabuti. Heto ang bayad ko.

Waiter Salamat po sir.
Bill Walang anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
ang chit nga namin	our bill please	
aba opo	sure, sir	3384
medyo nagulat	somewhat surprised	
ano ito	what is this?	
ang mga ito	these	
ang mga iyan	those	
magkano	how much	5
pangalawang order	second order	
kasama ba	is it included	
heto ang bayad	here's the payment	

#### Translation

Bill (May we have) Our bill please.

Waiter Of course sir. One moment please.

(Checking bill) What is this?

Waiter That's your starter sir.

And that, what is that?

Waiter That is (those are) your drinks, sir.

Bill Is that so? Is the service charge included here?

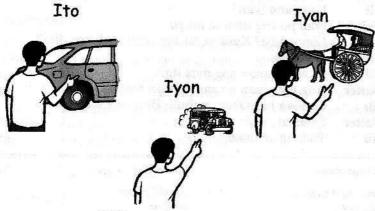
Waiter No, sir.

Bill What are these here?

Waiter Sir, those are your side dishes that came with the drinks.

Bill Is that so? Ok, that's fine. Here's the payment.

Waiter Thank you sir.
Bill You're welcome.



### **Language** skills

### 3 Ito, iyan, iyon This, that, that (over there)

Ito (pronounced *ee-taw*) 'This' refers to something close to the speaker, approximately within arm's reach. For example: Relos ko ito. This is my watch.

**Iyan** (pronounced *ee-yahn*) 'That' is used to refer to anything close to the person/s addressed (approximately within arm's reach) but not too close to the speaker. For example: Sariwa ba iyan? Is that fresh?

**Iyon** (pronounced *ee-yawn*) 'that' is used to refer to things at a distance from both the speaker and the person/s addressed. For example: **Anong halaman iyon?** What [kind of] plant is that [over there]?

Practise reading the following sentences:

Tagalog	Literal	English
Pasaporte ko ito	Passport my this	This is my passport
Ito ba ang pila?	This? the queue	Is this the queue?
Ilog Pasig iyan	River Pasig that	That is Pasig River
Bulkang Mayon iyon	Volcano Mayon that	That (over there) is Mayon volcano
Masarap ito	Delicious this	This is delicious
Bolpen ko rin iyan	Pen my also that	That is also my pen
Hindi ba barko iyon?	Not ? ship that	Isn't that a ship (over there)?

### 4 Mga + ito, iyan, iyon

Remember mga from page 106? By adding the pluraliser mga to ito, iyan, and iyon, we get mga ito, mga iyan, mga iyon. Strictly speaking, as ito, iyan and iyon are pronouns, it is theoretically correct just to add mga. In practice however, this does not happen. The problem is solved by simply annexing ang before mga, thus mga ito becomes ang mga ito, mga iyan becomes ang mga iyan and mga iyon becomes ang mga iyon. Look at the explanation:

	Process	Meaning
ang mga ito	the /pluraliser /this	= these
ang mga iyan	the/ pluraliser /that	= those
ang mga iyon	the/ pluraliser /that	= those (over there)

Here are some further examples:

	Singular	Plural
1.	Tagalog: Maleta ko ito.	Maleta ko ang mga ito or Mga maleta ko ang mga ito.
	English: This is my suitcase.	These are my suitcases.
2.	Tagalog: Malinis ba iyan? English: Is that clean?	Malilinis ba ang mga iyan? Are those clean?
3.	Tagalog: Bahay iyon.	Mga bahay ba ang mga iyon? Bahay ba ang mga iyon?
	English: Is that a house (over there)?	Are those houses (over there)?

### One-minute phrases:

Dala-dala (dah-lah dah-lah) Literally, load-load. Meaning a load carried around. For example: Laging maraming dala-dala si Bing. Bing has always a lot to carry around.

May padala (meh pah-dah-lah) Literally, has something (an item) to be delivered. Meaning a delivery. Something sent either through the post or delivered in person. May padala(ng) Barong Tagalog si Ate Ely sa akin. Ate Ely sent me a Barong Tagalog.

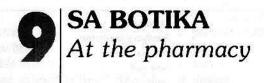
Mabuting makisama (mah-boo-teeng mah-kee-sah-mah) Literally, nice to conform with others. Meaning a person who gets along well with everybody. For example: Mabuting makisama si Doktor Rivera. Doctor Rivera gets along well with everybody.

Tirhan mo ako (teer-hahn maw ah-kaw) Meaning leave some (food) for me. Tirhan is derived from the verb tira meaning to portion out. For example: Tirhan mo ako ng leche flan. Leave some leche flan for me.

Sabi-sabi (sah-bee sah-bee) Literally, say-say/talk-talk. This phrase is used to refer to idle gossip. A common and very popular Tagalog saying is as follows: Ang maniwala sa sabi-sabi walang bait sa sarili. You are not kind to yourself if you believe in gossip.

### (i) Cultural tip

In rural Philippines, it is still very common for people to eat with their hands. This was the way Filipinos ate for hundreds of years before the arrival of the Spanish. *Kamayan* restaurants (kamayan comes from the Tagalog word kamay which means hand) offer people the opportunity to sample local delicacies in this traditional way. Why not try it out for yourself? If you show a willingness to enter into Filipino traditions, it can only serve to strengthen the ties with your Filipino friends.



#### In this unit you will learn how to

- ask for medication
- consult a doctor
- name the parts of the body

### **S** Asking for medication

### Dialogue 1

Louise Cook is at the pharmacy. She wants to buy some medicine for Roy who has been experiencing stomach trouble.

Louise May gamot ba kayo para sa pagtatae?

Pharmacist Meron po. Para sa inyo po ba?

Louise Hindi. Para sa anak ko.

Pharmacist Anong edad po ang anak ninyo?

Louise Dalawampung taon siya.

Pharmacist Heto po ang gamot sa pagtatae. Masakit din po ba

ang ulo niya?

Louise Hindi naman. Kailangan ba niya ng reseta ng

doktor?

Pharmacist Hindi na po. Iinumin po niya ito tatlong beses

isang araw. Iwasan lang po niyang uminom ng

tubig na may yelo.

Louise Maraming salamat. Heto ang bayad.

Pharmacist Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan Vocabulary may gamot has/have medicine (para) sa pagtatae for diarrhoea anong edad how old anak ninyo your child dalawampung anyos 20 years old ang gamot the medicine masakit hurting/painful ang ulo niya his/her head hindi naman not quite reseta ng doktor doctor's prescription hindi na po not anymore iinumin will swallow tatlong beses isang araw three times a day iwasan lang please avoid uminom to drink tubig na may yelo water with ice

#### **Translation**

Louise Do you have anything for diarrhoea?

**Pharmacist** Yes ma'am. Is it for you?

**Louise** No. It's for my son. **Pharmacist** How old is your son? **Louise** Twenty years old.

Pharmacist Here's the medicine for diarrhoea. Does he have a

headache too?

Louise No. Does he need a doctor's prescription?

Pharmacist No. He must take this three times a day. He needs

to avoid drinking water with ice.

Louise Thank you very much. Here's the payment.

Pharmacist Don't mention it.

### Exercise 1

How much do you remember from the dialogue between Louise Cook and the pharmacist? Can you match column A and column B?

est of the last the did to

1. gamot a. para sa anak ko

reseta
 dad
 para sa inyo po ba?
 tubig
 ulo
 d. doktor

5. masakit e. dalawampung anyos

6. uminom f. sa pagtatae

Other items commonly found at the pharmacy can be found in the vocabulary box.

#### Talasalitaan Vocabulary

thermometer termometro sticking plaster 'band aid' antiseptik krema antiseptic cream medicine for diarrhoea gamot sa pagtatae gamot sa sakit ng ulo headache tablet medicine for colds gamot sa sipon cotton wool bulak medicine for vomiting gamot sa nagsusuka

'bandage' or pantapal bandage tintura de yudo iodine

gamot sa ubo cough medicine

### M Language skills

#### 1 Para sa For

When Louise Cook asked the pharmacist for some medicine for her son, she said: 'May gamot ba kayo para sa pagtatae? Do you have (any) medication for diarrhoea? The Tagalog words 'Para sa' used in this example are translated into English as 'for'. Para sa can be used in three different ways:-

1. To indicate where or who something is for: for example, 'Para sa guro ang bolpen', The ballpen is for the teacher. 'Para sa kusina ang mga silya', The chairs are for the kitchen. Sometimes Tagalog drops the word 'para' and so the sentence becomes simply 'sa guro ang bolpen' or 'sa kusina ang mga silya'. When para is deleted, however, the resultant sentence is often ambiguous, since the sa phrase may be interpreted as a

possessive sa phrase 'sa guro ang bol pen' may also mean the pen belongs to the teacher. Para, therefore, cannot be dropped. When the name of an individual is involved, then para sa becomes para kay, for example, 'Para kay Amy ang silid na ito' or simply 'kay Amy ang silid na ito', This room is for Amy.

- 2. To indicate favour or support for an individual or group: for example, 'Para sa Partido Mabuhay si Ignacio', Ignacio is for the Mabuhay Party', 'Para sa Newcastle United F.C. si John', John is for Newcastle United F.C. Once again, sometimes the word 'para' is dropped and the sentences become 'sa Partido Mabuhay si Ignacio' and 'sa Newcastle United F.C. si John'.
- 3. To indicate the purpose of or for something: for example, 'Para sa paglalaba ang sabon', The soap is for washing clothes; Para sa pagtulog ang kulambo', The mosquito net is for sleeping; 'Para sa pagsulat ang lapis', The pencil is for writing. Notice that in this type of sentence, the word para cannot be dropped.

# 2 Para kanino For whom Para saan For what

The related Tagalog question words are 'para kanino' (for whom?) and 'para saan' (for what?). Both question words look for an answer in the 'para sa' form. For example: 'Para kanino ang pasalubong?' (for whom is the gift?), 'para kay Alice ang pasalubong' (the gift is for Alice). Para saan ang gatas? (what is the milk for?), para sa kape ang gatas (the milk is for the coffee). Use the following table to guide you through the different variations of the para sa form:

	Tagalog	English	Question word
1st person	para sa akin	for me	Para kanino
	para sa amin	for us (exclusive)	Para kanino
	para sa atin	for us (inclusive)	Para kanino
2nd person			
	para sa iyo	for you	Para kanino
	para sa inyo	for you (plural and singular formal)	Para kanino

3rd person	para kay	for + person's name =	para kanino
	para kina	for + person's	
		and friend/s' names =	para kanino
	para sa kaniya	for him/her	para kanino
	para sa kanila	for them	para kanino
	para sa tao	for a person	para kanino
		(personal noun)	
	para sa paa	for the foot (thing)	para saan
	para sa bintana	for the window	para saan
		(place)	

#### Take a look at the following examples:

Tagalog:	Para sa bata ang gatas
English:	The milk is for the child
Tagalog:	Para sa lola ang pamaypay
English:	The fan is for grandmother

Tagalog: Para kay Patricia ang mga bulaklak

English: The flowers are for Patricia
Tagalog: Para sa akin ba ang mga ito?

English: Are these for me?

Tagalog: Hindi para sa kanila ang pagkain

English: The food is not for them
Tagalog: Para sa bagong meyor ako
English: I am for the new mayor

Tagalog: Para sa mga bata ang mga laruan English: The toys are for the children

Tagalog: Para sa organisasyon ko ba si Liam?

English: Is Liam for my organisation?

### Exercise 2

Now try answering the questions by saying what each item is for. Choose the correct answer from the vocabulary box provided.

Example:

Para saan ang mantikilya?

Para sa tinapay ang mantikilya.

1.	Para saan ang gatas?	Carrier In Succession
2.	Para saan ang kurtina?	
3.	Para saan ang selyo?	
4.	Para saan ang payong?	
5.	Para saan ang kama?	
6.	Para saan ang maleta?	MARGON TO THE STATE OF THE STAT
7	Para saan ang yelo?	A STATE OF THE STA

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
ulan	rain	
mantikilya	margarine	
gatas	milk	
silid-tulugan	bedroom	
kurtina	curtain	
selyo	stamp	
tsaa	tea	
bintana	window	
biyahe	travel	
kama	bed	
maleta	suitcase	
The second second		

## Consulting a doctor

### Dialogue 2

Roy Cook's stomach trouble had still not cleared up by the following day and so he decided to pay a visit to the doctor. We now join him at the surgery.

Doktor Anong masakit sa iyo?

Masakit po ang tiyan ko at nagtatae ako. May binili Roy

akong gamot sa botika para sa pagtatae.

Doktor Mabuti. Ano ba ang kinain mo? Pansit, litson at San Miguel beer. Roy Doktor Tingnan ko nga ang mata mo.

Roy (Ibinuka ang mata) Doktor Tingnan ko naman ang bibig mo at ilabas mo ang dila mo.

(Ibinuka ang bibig at inilabas ang dila). Roy Ilang beses kang nagtatae sa isang araw? Doktor

Mga limang beses po. Roy

Doktor Sobra siguro ang nakain mo. Bibigyan kita ng dalawang

reseta. Isa para sa sakit ng tiyan.

Roy Para saan po itong isa?

Doktor Para sa pagtatae. Toasted bread lang muna ang kainin

mo.

Roy Salamat po.

Doktor Walang anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ang tiyan ko	my stomach
nagtatae ako	I'm having diarrhoea
may binili ako(ng)	I bought
ang kinain mo	what you ate
tingnan ko nga	let me see/examine
ang mata mo	your eyes
ibinuka	opened
ang bibig mo	your mouth
ilabas	show
ang dila mo	your tongue
ilang beses	how many times
sa isang araw	in one day
mga lima	about five
sobra siguro	perhaps too much
ang nakain mo	what you have eaten
bibigyan kita	I'll give you
dalawang reseta	two prescriptions
para sa sakit ng tiyan	for stomach ache
para sa pagtatae	for diarrhoea
lang muna	first
ang kainin mo	what you have to eat

#### **Translation**

**Doctor** Where are you feeling the pain?

Roy I have a stomach ache and I've got diarrhoea. I bought

some medication for diarrhoea from the pharmacy.

Doctor Good. What have you eaten?

Roy Noodles, suckling pig and San Miguel beer.

Doctor Let me examine your eyes.

Roy (Opening his eyes)

**Doctor** Now let me look in your mouth. Show me your tongue.

Roy (Opening his mouth and showing his tongue).

Doctor How many times a day are you going to the toilet?

Roy About five times sir.

Doctor Perhaps you've over eaten. I will give you two

prescriptions. One for your stomach ache.

**Roy** What is the other one for?

Doctor For your diarrhoea. Just eat toast for the meantime.

Roy Thank you.

Doctor Don't mention it.

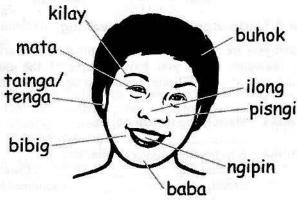
### Naming the parts of the body

### Mga bahagi ng katawan Parts of the body

Listen to the tape for the correct pronunciation of each word. Use the pronunciation guide to help you remember the words.

English	Tagalog	Pronounced
1. ankle	bukongbukong	boo-kawng-boo-kawng
2. arm	bisig	bee-seeg
3. back	likod	lee-kawd
4. backside	puwit	poo-weet
5. breast	dibdib	deeb-deeb
6. cheek	pisngi	pees-ngee
7. chin	baba	bah-bah
8. ears	tainga/tenga	teh-ngah
9. elbow	siko	see-kaw
10. $eye(s)$	mata	mah-tah
11. eyebrow	kilay	kee-ligh
12. eyelashes	pilikmata	pee-leet-mah-tah





13. face	mukha	mook-hah
14. foot	paa	pah-ah
15. fingers/toes	daliri	dah-lee-ree
16. hand	kamay	kah-migh
17. hair	buhok	boo-hawk
18. head	ulo	oo-law
19. heel	sakong	sah-kawng
20. hips	balakang	bah-lah-kahng
21. <i>jaw</i>	panga	pah-ngah
22. knee	tuhod	too-hawd
23. leg	binti	been-tee
24. lower arm	braso	brah-saw
25. mouth	bibig	bee-beeg
26. nape	batok	bah-tawk
27. neck	leeg	leh-ehg
28. nose	ilong	ee-lawng
29. palm	palad	pah-lahd
30. penis	buto	boo-taw
31. scalp	anit	ah-neet
32. shoulder	balikat	bah-lee-kaht
33. sole	talampakan	tah-lahm-pah-kahn
34. stomach	tiyan	tee-yahn
35. teeth	ngipin	ngee-peen
36. tongue	dila	dee-lah
37. vagina	puki	poo-kee
38. waist	baywang/bewang	beh-wahng
39. wrist	pulso	pool-saw

### Exercise 3 Understanding and speaking

Imagine that you are at the pharmacy. Complete your part of the following dialogue. Once you have completed the dialogue, why not ask one of your Filipino friends to act out the dialogue with you:

Parmasyotika	Magandang umaga po,	sir.
Ikaw	(Sa	y good morning )
Parmasyotika	Ano po ang kailangan	nila, sir?
Ikaw	Masakit ang	(Say: I have
	a toothache) May para dito?	(medicine) ba kayo

Parmasyotika	Opo. Mayroon po.
Ikaw	
	(formal).)
Parmasyotika	Gusto po ba ninyo ay yung iinumin?
Ikaw	(Say Yes, that's fine)
Parmasyotika	O sige po. heto po ang tabletas. Iinumin ninyo ito tatlong beses isang araw.
Ikaw	? (Ask how much it is)
Parmasyotika	Treynta pesos po.
Ikaw	Heto (Say Here's the payment)
Parmasyotika	Maraming salamat po.
Ikaw	(Say don't
	mention it)

### Exercise 4

Can you place the following list of body parts in their correct order? For the correct order, begin with the top of the body and work down to the feet.

- 1. ulo
- 2. paa
- 3. mata
- 4. daliri
- 5. binti
- 6. kamay
- 7. buhok
- 8. panga
- 9. talampakan
- 10. tiyan

#### Exercise 5

Say	wh	ether	the	follow	ing s	tatements	are	tama	(true) o	r	mali
(false	e).	Use 1	the v	ocabul:	ary be	ox to help	p you	. Rem	ember:	a	mali
answ	er	shou	ıld	follow	this	format:	Nasa	ı	<u>DELJA</u>		ang

Example: Nasa kamay ang mata. Answer: Mali. Nasa mukha ang mata.

1.	Nasa	gitna	ng	binti	ang	tuhod.	Answer:
----	------	-------	----	-------	-----	--------	---------

2. Nasa likuran ang dibdib. Answer:

3. Nasa kamay ang mga daliri. Answer:

4. Nasa bisig ang talampakan. Answer:

5. Nasa tenga ang labi. Answer:

6. Nasa bisig ang kamay. Answer:

#### Talasalitaan

Vocabulary

nasa harapan at the front nasa tabi ng beside/next to the nasa gitna ng in the middle of nasa pagitan ng between the nasa ilallim ng at the bottom of nasa ibaba ng below the nasa itaas ng above the nasa likuran at the back/behind

### Exercise 6 Listening and understanding



Look at the pictures. On the tape you will hear a number of people complaining about their ailments. Can you match up the picture with the ailment?







### One-minute phrases

Parang kabute pronounced (pah-rahng kah-boo-teh) Literally, 'like mushroom'. This term is applied to a person who seems to have the ability to appear and disappear. In Filipino tradition, mushrooms are said to appear almost overnight. An example of this is the child who regularly plays truant from school, attending class only occasionally.

Ang sakit ng kalingkingan ay damdam ng buong katawan (ang-sah-keet nahng kah-leeng-kee-ngahn igh dahm-dahm nahng booawng kah-tah-wahn) This is a popular Filipino saying which can be translated as the pain of the little finger is felt by the whole body. For example, in a situation where a worker makes a mistake, the consequences of that mistake may be experienced by all or many of his / her co-workers.

Ganito 'von (gah-nee-taw 'yawn) Literally, it's like this... A phrase roughly equivalent to the English expression, 'beating around the bush'. The expression is often used when someone wants to give a long (boring?) explanation. Example: Saan ka galing? Ganito 'yon... . Where have you been? Well, it's like this ... .

Nakapamburol (nah-kah-pahm-boo-rawl) Literally, dressed in funeral attire. This is a very common Tagalog expression applied to a person dressed in his/ her Sunday best (best clothing). Similar in meaning to the English expressions, dressed to the nines or dressed to kill. Example: Nakapamburol si Mario kasi abay siya sa kasal. Mario is dressed to kill because he will be a sponsor at the wedding.

Dedbol na ako (ded-bol-nah-ahkaw) Literally, I'm like a dead bull. Similar in meaning to the English expressions I'm exhausted, I'm shattered.

### **Cultural** tip

Filipino people are generally very modest about their bodies, particularly the women. Revealing swimming costumes and other garments are not commonly worn, especially in rural areas. In Filipino culture, modesty and respectability go hand in hand. Respecting local culture in this regard will ensure a healthy respect for the visitor too! Tourist beaches and resorts do, however, offer a more relaxed environment for the sun worshipper. Don't forget the after-sun lotion!

# TULONG? (Need) Help?

### In this unit you will learn how to

- ask for help
- use the sa possessives and kanino (whose)
- shop for a gift
- use sa as a preposition

### Asking for help

### Dialogue 1

Bill Cook needs some assistance. He bought a tee-shirt but it doesn't fit him. He's gone back to the department store.

Tindera Magandang hapon po. Ano pong maipaglilingkod ko

sa invo?

Bill Magandang hapon naman. Itong T-shirt na binili ko

dito, maliit sa akin. Size L lang ito.

Tindera Ganoon po ba? Sa inyo po ba? Ano pong size ninyo?

Size XXL ako. Oo sa akin. May XXL ba kayo? Bill

Sa palagay ko po. Sumunod po kayo sa akin sa T-shirt Tindera

department. Dito po ba ninvo kinuha iyan?

Bill Oo. Dito sa lugar na ito.

Tindera Pumili po kayo ng size ninyo at papalitan namin iyan.

Bill **Tindera** Wala pong anuman.

Maraming salamat.

Talasalitaan Vocabulary tindera assistant (female) itong T-shirt this tee-shirt na binili ko dito that I bought here maliit sa akin small for me lang ito this is only ganoon po ba is that so sa palagay ko in my opinion sumunod po kayo sa akin please follow me ninyo kinuha iyan you got that sa lugar na ito here in this place pumili po kayo please choose ng size ninyo your size papalitan namin iyan we will replace that

#### Translation

Tindera Good afternoon sir. What can I do for you?

Bill Good afternoon to you, too. The tee-shirt I bought here,

it's small for me. (It's) Only size L.

Tindera Is that so sir? Is it yours sir? What size do you take? I take XXL. Yes it's mine. Do you have size XXL? Bill I think so sir. Please follow me to the tee-shirt Tindera

department. Did you get that from this department?

Yes. Here in this area.

Tindera Please choose your size and we'll exchange it.

Bill Thank you.

**Tindera** You're welcome sir.

### Exercise 1

Bill

Can you supply the correct question to Bill's answer?

1. Bill: 'Itong T-shirt na binili ko dito, maliit sa akin.'

Did the tindera ask:

- a. Gusto po ba ninyo ng T-shirt?
- b. Ano pong maipaglilingkod ko sa inyo?
- c. Magandang hapon po.

2. Bill: 'Size L lang ito.'

Was he asked:

- a. Sa inyo po ba?
- b. Anong size po?
- c. Ganoon po ba?
- 3. Bill: 'Size XXL ako.'

Did the tindera ask:

- a. Ganoon po ba?
- b. Size L po ba?
- c. Ano pong size ninyo?
- 4. Bill: 'Oo. Dito sa lugar na ito.'

The tindera asked:

- a. Saan po ninyo kinuha iyan?
- b. Dito ba ninyo kinuha iyan?
- c. Dito mo ba kinuha iyan?

### Language skills

### 1 Sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya Mine, yours, his/hers

The words mine, yours, his/hers, ours, yours, and theirs all tell us about who owns or possesses something. In English these words are known as possessives (see also Unit 7). There are two main ways in which the possessive is expressed in Tagalog: 1) by the use and of may or mayroon (see Unit 2), 2) by the use of the possessive sa form. In the possessive sa form (sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya, sa amin, sa atin, sa inyo, sa kanila and sa + personal / common noun) sa is used together with the possessor in order to express possession of the subject. For example: Sa akin ang aklat. The book is mine. Sa inyo ba ang maletang ito? Is this suitcase yours? Sa babae ang payong. The umbrella belongs to the woman. Remember: the sa form changes depending on who or what is the possessor. For example, sa becomes kay or kina when used with a person or people's names. Try not to worry about this. You will pick up more as you go along. Just look at the following examples:

1.	Sa bata ang bisikleta	The bicycle belongs to the child
2.	Kay Joe ang malamig na inumin	The cold drink is Joe's
3.	Kina Ely ang regalo	The gift belongs to Ely and her friends
4.	Sa atin ba iyan?	Is that ours?
5.	Sa Amerikano daw ang lapis	Apparently the pencil belongs

to the American

#### Sa possession table

	Tagalog	English
1st person	sa akin	mine
9 <del>5</del> 7	sa amin	ours (exclusive)
	sa atin	ours (inclusive)
2nd person		
	sa iyo	yours
	sa inyo	yours (plural and
	Decree Management	singular polite)
3rd person		
Silver of the	kay Sally	Sally's
	kina Gary	Gary's and his friend/s'
	sa kaniya	his/hers
	sa kanila	theirs
	sa + personal noun	belong/s to
	sa + common noun	belong/s to

### Exercise 2

Using what you have learned so far in this chapter, re-arrange the following jumbled up sentences into their correct form. The literal English translation should give you a clue.

1.	Tagalog: Correct order:	maletang / ito / ang / sa akın
	Literal:	Mine the suitcase this.
2.	Tagalog: Correct order:	Sa bata / bisikleta / ang / ba?
	Literal:	Belonging to the child the bicycle's

3.	Tagalog: Correct order:	ang / Jeepney / bagong / sa kanila .
	Literal:	Belongs to them the new Jeepney.
4.	Tagalog: Correct order:	sa /iyan / hindi / iyo.
	Literal:	Not yours that.
5.	Tagalog: Correct order:	tsinelas / Beth / ang / kay.
	Literal:	Beth's the slippers.
6.	Tagalog: Correct order:	ito / kina / ba / Philip?
	Literal:	Belong to Philip and his friend/s does this?

### 2 Mga kulay Colours

We have already met some of the Tagalog words for colours. Here is a fuller list:

Tagalog	Pronunciation	English
berde	behr-deh	green
azul	ah-sool	blue
pula	poo-lah	red
puti	poo-tee	white
dilaw	dee-lao	yellow
itim	ee-teem	black
rosas	raw-sahs	pink
kayumanggi	ka-you-mang-gee	brown
kulay dalandan	koo-lie da-lan-dan	orange
kulay-abo	koo-lie-ah-bo	grey
biyoleta/murado	bee-yaw-let-ah	purple
kulay-pilak	koo-lie-pee-lak	silver
kulay-ginto	koo-lie-gin-taw	gold

### Exercise 3

Read through the list of Tagalog colour words again. Now cover the list up and line up the English words with their correct Tagalog equivalents:

1.	yellow	berde
2.	white	kulay-pilak
3.	red	itim
4.	blue	puti
5.	silver	biyoleta
6.	purple	kulay ginto
7.	black	dilaw
8.	green	pula
9.	gold	azul

### Exercise 4 Reading and listening

Listen to the tape. Margaret, Bob and family are on a visit to Mines View Park in Baguio. They are trying to decide who will carry each of the bags. Follow the text then try to answer the questions that follow.

#### Sa Mines View Park sa Baguio

Nasa Mines View Park sa Baguio si Margaret at ang asawa niyang si Bob. Marami silang bag dahil kasama nila si Stephen, Amy, Lucy at Paul. Pakinggan natin sila:

Margaret Kanino itong pulang bag?

Amy Sa akin po.

Bob Kanino naman ang itim na tote bag?
Stephen Hindi sa akin. Kay Paul iyan.
Margaret Kanino ang dilaw na plastic bag?

Paul Kay Lucy yata.

Bob Itong itim na duffel bag, sa iyo ba ito, Stephen?

Stephen Opo. Salamat po.

Margaret Sa iyo ba ang denim na tote bag, Paul?

Paul Hindi po. Kay tatay iyan.

#### Talasalitaan Vocabulary nasa parke at the park ang asawa niyang her husband marami many/plenty dahil sa because kasama nila accompanied by kanino whose pulang handbag red handbag itim black hindi sa akin not mine dilaw vellow vata I think this black (one) itong itim

#### Translation

Margaret Whose red bag is this?
Amy (It's) mine mum.

**Bob**: (And) who does this black tote bag belong to?

Stephen Not mine. That is Paul's.

Margaret Whose is the yellow plastic bag?

Paul I think that's Lucy's.

Bob This black duffel bag, is this yours, Stephen?

Stephen Yes sir. Thank you.

Margaret Is the denim tote bag yours, Paul? Paul No ma'am. That belongs to Dad.

#### Answer in complete sentences.

1. Kay Paul ba ang itim na tote bag?

2. Kay Stephen ba ang pulang plastic bag?

3. Kay Paul ba ang duffel bag?

4. Kanino ang denim na tote bag?

5. Kay Lucy ba ang dilaw na plastic bag?

# Shopping for a gift

# Dialogue 2

The Cook family are at a handicraft shop shopping for pasalubong.

Louise Magaganda ang mga panyolito, pamaypay at burdadong

napkins dito. Bibili ako ng isang dosenang panyolito.

Bill Tama. Para kanino ang mga panyolito?

Louise Para sa mga ka-opisina ko.
Kanino ang mga pamaypay?
Louise Sa akin. Bibili ako ng tatlo.

Bill Bibili naman ako ng laruang Jeepney.

Louise Kanino ang laruang Jeepney?

Kanino pa? 'di sa akin at kay Roy.

Louise Kanino naman ang burdadong napkins?

Bill Sa kapitbahay natin. Pasalubong!

Louise Tama.

#### Talasalitaan Vocabulary magaganda beautiful (plural) ang mga panyolito the handkerchiefs mga pamaypay fans burdado(ng) embroidered sa kapitbahay natin for our neighbours bibili ako ng I'll buy/I'm going to buy isang dosenang one dozen tama that's right para kanino for whom para sa for mga ka-opisina ko my officemates laruan(g) kanino pa whose else 'di sa akin of course it's mine pasalubong gift

#### Translation

Louise The handkerchiefs, fans and embroidered napkins here

are gorgeous. I'm going to buy a dozen handkerchiefs.

Bill All right. For whom are the handkerchiefs?

Louise For my officemates.

Bill Whose are the fans?

Louise Mine. I'm going to buy three.
I'm going to buy a toy Jeepney.

Louise Whose is the toy Jeepney?

**Bill** Who else's? Of course, it's for Roy and me. **Louise** And whose are the embroidered napkins?

Bill They are for our neighbours. Homecoming gifts!

Louise Exactly!

# **Language** skills

#### 3 Kanino Whose

Whenever we use a sa form sentence to express possession by a person or persons, then the accompanying question word is always kanino (whose). For example, 'Kanino ang payong?', Whose is the umbrella? I To whom does the umbrella belong? or Who does the umbrella belong to? You will notice that there are three variations given in English. The Tagalog form is much simpler using only kanino. To form a kanino question, simply use kanino in place of the sa possessor. Note that Tagalog sometimes uses kanino in connection with ng as a linker, thereby becoming kanino + ng = kaninong. The main difference is that kanino is used on its own to represent the question word 'whose', whereas kaninong may only be used when followed by the noun it describes or modifies. It can never stand alone. Here are some examples of this form:

1. Kaninong sombrero (noun) iyan? Whose hat is that? Kaninong kotse (noun) ang nasa garahe? Whose car is in the garage? Kaninong anak (noun) si Sophie? Whose child is Sophie?

2. Kanino ang lapis? Whose is the pencil? Kanino ang kotseng itim? Whose is the black car?

Look at the following examples:

Question: Kanino ang mga maleta? Sa amin ang mga maleta.

Question: Kanino ang bansang Pilipinas?

Reply: Sa mga Pilipino ang bansang Pilipinas.

Question: Kaninong anak si Prince Charles?

Reply: Kay Queen Elizabeth na anak si Prince Charles or

Kay Queen Elizabeth.

Question: Kaninong pamasahe ito? Sa aking pamasahe ito.

Question: Kaninong pasaporte ang nasa mesa?

Reply: Kay Corang pasaporte ang nasa mesa.

Question: Kanino ang computer dito?

Reply: Sa mga estudyante ang computer dito.

#### Exercise 5

Why don't you translate the following sentences into Tagalog? Use kanino or kaninong + noun.

Example: Whose is this?

Whose child is Beth?

Kanino ito?

Kaninong anak si Beth?

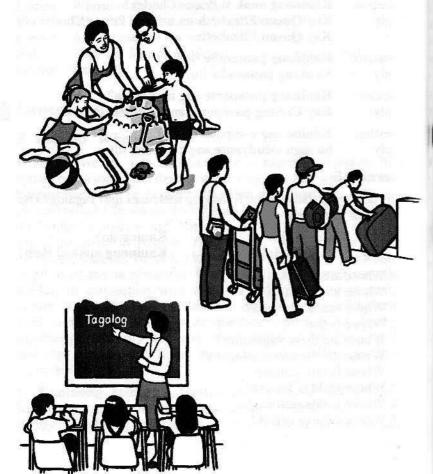
- 1. Whose are those?
- 2. Whose house is this?
- 3. Whose teacher is Cora?
- 4. Whose is that?
- 5. Whose are these vegetables?
- 6. Whose are the green mangoes?
- 7. Whose is this suitcase?
- 8. Whose child is Joanna?
- 9. Whose is this suitcase?
- 10. Whose camera is that?

# E----

## Exercise 6 Listening and speaking

Listen to the tape. You will hear items mentioned that belong to one of the groups of people in the cartoons. Can you identify which item belongs to which group? You will be asked: **Kanino ang** [+ item]? Your reply should be:

1. sa mga tao sa beach, 2. sa mga turista or 3. sa mga bata. Use the vocabulary box provided to help you.



Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
beach ball	beach ball	
pala	spade	
balde	bucket	
tuwalya	towel	
pasaporte	passport	
tiket	ticket	
lapis	pencil	
notbuk	notebook	
pisara	blackboard	ilue:
kamera/Kodak	camera	
sunglasses	sunglasses	
radyo	radio	
alimango	crab	
desk	desk	

# M Language skills

# 4 Sa To/to the, in/in the, on/on the, at/at the

We have already met 'sa' and looked at its uses in connection with other words. A further use of 'sa' is that it represents the place where the action expressed in a sentence occurs. For example: Bumili si Roy ng posporo sa tindahan. Roy bought some matches from the store. By far the most common usage of sa is when it represents the English words in/in the, on/on the, at/at the. English refers to these words as prepositions. Prepositions tend to be used in two main ways: 1) to represent a place, 2) to represent time. We can try to make this a little clearer by looking at a few examples of each: Lumalangoy si Louie sa dagat, Louie is swimming in the sea. May kumakain ba sa kusina?, Is someone eating in the kitchen? May pagkain na sa mesa, There is food on the table now. Umiyak siya sa simula ng tula, He/she cried at the beginning of the poem. All of these are prepositions of place. Prepositions can also be used to express the time in which an action occurred. For example: Matutulog ako sa hapon, I will sleep in the afternoon. Mananahi ako sa Sabado, I will do some sewing on Saturday. Nagtatrabaho si Greg sa gabi, Greg works at night.

Study these further examples:

Bibisita ka ba sa kamakalawa? Tagalog: Will you be visiting in a fortnight? English:

Wala kami sa bahay kahapon. Tagalog: We weren't at home yesterday. English:

Pupunta ka ba sa kaarawan ko? Tagalog: English: Are you coming to my party?

Kayo ba ang manedyer sa tindahang ito? Tagalog:

Are you the manager in this store? English:

The vocabulary box contains some useful time words and phrases.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ngayon	today
kahapon	yesterday
bukas	tomorrow
sa isang araw	the day before yesterday
sa isang araw	the day after tomorrow
ngayong linggo	this week
noong isang linggo	last week
sa isang linggo	next week
ngayong umaga	this morning
ngayong hapon	this afternoon
mamayang gabi	tonight
kahapon nang hapon	yesterday afternoon
kagabi	last night
bukas nang umaga	tomorrow morning
bukas nang gabi	tomorrow night
bukas nang hapon	tomorrow afternoon
bukas nang tanghali	tomorrow midday
mamaya	later
linggo-linggo	every week
tuwing Linggo	every Sunday

#### Exercise 7

Fill in the space with the correct sa (preposition of place) reply. Use the vocabulary box to help you.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
dagat	sea -	
tindahan	store	
palengke	market	DIFT,
palaruan	playground	
kalye	street/road	
tindahan ng laruan	toy store	
paliparan	airport	* 11 11 11 11 11 11 11

- Bibili (buy) si Boy ng sorbetes
- Maraming eroplano (aeroplanes)
- Maliligo (bathe) ka ba
- 4. Magaganda ang mga laruan (toys)
- Sariwa (fresh) ang mga gulay (vegetables)
- Naglalaro (play) sina Eileen
- 7. Tumatakbo (run) ang mga sasakyan (transportation)



#### Exercise 8

This time, provide a sa (preposition of time) reply. Use the vocabulary from the box to help you.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
tanghali	midday	
gabi	at night	
hapon	afternoon	
umaga	morning	a lugh a phili
Sabado	Saturday	
Linggo	Sunday	
hatinggabi	midnight	82

Example: Aalis daw siya sa umaga.

Appparently he/she is leaving in the morning.

1.	Narito ang mga magulang (parents) ni . (afternoon)	Elizabeth
2.	kami sisimba. (will	go to church)
3.	Maraming bituin (stars)	the gralewayer,
4.	Mainit (hot) ang araw	(midday)
5.	Lumulubog (sets) ang araw	
6.	Sumisikat (shine) ang araw	
7	Pununta (will oo) si Javne at si John d	ito

#### One-minute phrases

Sigurado ka ba? (see-goo-rah-daw kah bah) Literally, sure you are? This phrase is commonly used to express doubt about information. For example: Sigurado ka bang darating ang bisita mo mamaya? Are you sure your visitor will be arriving later?

Palabiro (pah-lah-bee-raw) Literally, fond of joking. A person with a good sense of humour! For example: Palabiro si Juanito kaya laging masaya ang barkada niya. Juanito is fond of cracking jokes that's why his friends are always in a happy mood.

Tayo-tayo (tah-yaw tah-yaw) Literally, we-we or us-us. First person plural. This phrase seems grammatically unusual. Anybody who uses the expression 'tayo-tayo' automatically excludes other people from their group. For example: Sinu-sino ang iimbitahin mo sa party mo? Who are you going to invite to your party? Reply: Wala. Tayo-tayo lang. No-one. Just ourselves.

Sila-sila (see-lah-see-lah) Literally, they-they, exactly the same connotation as 'tayo-tayo' except that this time, it is in the third person plural. For example: Sila-sila lang ang nag-uusap. They themselves are just talking to one another.

Maasim ang mukha (mah-ah-seem ahng mook-hah) Literally, the face is sour. This applies to someone whose facial expressions indicate disapproval. For example: Parang galit si Mister Cruz, maasim ang mukha eh. I think Mr Cruz is angry, his face looks sour.



#### Cultural tip

For the visiting westerner, clothing in the Philippines can seem very good value for money. Be careful, however, as things may not always be as they seem! Always check a garment carefully. As regulations tend to be more relaxed, there are plenty of 'fake' goods on the market. Check the size carefully, too. Filipinos tend to be smaller in physical stature than their western cousins. A good rule of thumb would be to always try the next size up. For example, if you normally buy XL tee-shirts at home, look for a Filipino size XXL.

## In this unit you will learn how to

- make an appointment
- describe what you want done
- use pseudo-verbs

# Making an appointment

# Dialogue 1

Bill Cook wants to have his hair cut. He telephones a nearby barber shop.

Bill Magandang umaga. Gusto kong magpagupit.

Barbero Magandang umaga po naman. Anong oras po ang ibig

ninyo?

Bill Kailangan kong magpagupit ngayong alas dos. Puwede ba? Barbero Titingnan ko po. Aba, may bakante po kami. Puwede

po. Kung gusto po ninyo, mas maaga.

Bill Ayaw ko nang mas maaga. Alas dos na lang.

Barbero Opo. Maraming salamat po.

Bill Walang anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
gusto ko(ng)	I like/want
magpagupit	have a haircut
ang ibig ninyo?	what you want?
ngayon(g) alas dos	today at two o'clock
puwede ba	is it possible
titingnan ko	let me see
aba	oh!/say!
may bakante	has/have a vacancy
avaw ko	I don't like
mas maaga	earlier

I WANT A HAIRCUT

149

#### Translation

Bill Good morning. I want to have a haircut.

Barber Good morning to you, too. What time do you have in

mind?

Bill I need to have a haircut today at 2.00 p.m. Is this

possible?

Barber Let me see. Yes, we have a vacancy. It's possible sir. If

you like, we have an earlier time.

Bill I don't want an earlier time. 2.00 p.m. would be all right.

Barber Yes sir. Thank you very much.

Bill Don't mention it.

# Inday & Nenet Styling Salon Del Pilar Street Iloilo City 5000

Telephone: 56534

#### Price List

Gupit (lalaki)	₱50.00
Kulot (perm)	₱200.00
Manicure	₱60.00
Pedicure	₱60.00
Masahe	₱75.00
Hair Colour & Wash	₱300.00
Wax	₱400.00
Cut & Wash	₱150.00

Tumatanggap kami ng Home Bookings

# Exercise 1

Listen once again to Dialogue 1 on the tape. Try playing the part of the barber, then reverse roles and play the part of Bill Cook.

# Language skills

#### 1 Pseudo-verbs

need(s) (to), ought to, must, should kailangan ought to, must, should dapat maaari can, may, could, might puwede can, may, could, might like(s) (to), would like (to) want(s) (to) gusto ibig like(s) (to), would like (to), want(s) (to) like(s) (to), would like (to), want(s) (to) nais do(es)n't like (to), wouldn't like (to) ayaw

Just one look at this lengthy list is probably enough to send a chill down the spine of the most hardened language learner... – but fear not! Although the list looks complicated, it is in fact quite straightforward. All of the words in the list appear at first glance to be ordinary verbs (doing words). However, although they do have verb-like meanings, they do not change in the same way that genuine verbs do and are therefore called pseudo-verbs. As the translations show, some of the pseudo-verbs are similar to one another in meaning: kailangan and dapat; maaari and puwede; gusto, ibig and nais. There are however certain subtle differences.

For example, in sentences where **kailangan** or **dapat** occur, **kailangan** suggests internal necessity or need, whereas **dapat** suggests external necessity or appropriateness. Look at the following sample sentences: a. **Kailangan** matalino ang estudyante b. **Dapat** (na) matalino ang estudyante, may be translated as *The student must be intelligent*. Sentence (a) suggests that the student feels the need to be intelligent, whereas sentence (b) requires that the student be intelligent.

In sentences where **maaari** or **puwede** occur, both denote ability, permission or possibility. **Maaari** is common in both formal and informal contexts; **puwede** is common only in informal contexts.

Gusto, ibig and nais all denote preference or desire. The three differ from one another in level of usage and in some cases, in connotation as well. Gusto is the most common. Ibig is more formal than gusto, and occurs more frequently in writing than in speech. Nais is the most formal and is rare in ordinary conversation.

Ayaw is the contrary of gusto, ibig and nais in that it expresses dislike.

These pseudo-verbs are commonly used in conjunction with **ng** which we first met in Unit 7 (more on this later in this unit). The usage table will help you to decide which is the most appropriate pseudo verb to use:

#### Usage table

Pseudo-verb	English	Use
gusto	like(s) (to), would like (to), want (s)	most common; mild inclination to a stronger desire
ibig	like(s) (to), would like (to), want (s)	more formal than <b>gusto</b> and occurs more frequently in writing than in speech; a fairly strong desire
nais	like(s), (to) would like (to), want (s)	specify stronger preferences than <b>gusto</b> ; a strong desire
ayaw	do(es)n't like (to), wouldn't like (to)	contrary of gusto, ibig, nais (similar in meaning to hindi)
dapat	ought to, must, should	connotes external necessity or appropriateness
kailangan	need(s) (to), ought to, must, should	connotes internal necessity or need
maaari	can, may, could, might	denotes ability, permission, or possibility; common in both informal and formal contexts
Puwede	can, may, could, might	denotes ability, permission, or possibility; common only in informal contexts

#### Examples:

Tagalog: Kailangan mo ba ito? English: Do you need this?

Tagalog: Hindi ko **gusto** ang pagkain kagabi. English: I didn't like the food last night.

Tagalog: Puwede tayong matulog doon.

English: We can sleep (over) there.

Tagalog: Ito ba ang nais mo? English: Is this what you want?

Tagalog: Iyan ang **ibig** ko sa kaniya. English: That's what I like about him.

Tagalog: **Ayaw** ko ng kapeng walang gatas. English: *I don't like coffee without milk.* 

Tagalog: **Dapat** na narito sila bukas.
English: They should be here tomorrow.
Tagalog: **Maaari** bang dito muna tayo?
English: Might we stop here first?

# Exercise 2

Complete the following sentences with an appropriate pseudo-verb.

1. Ano ang (gusto, kailangan, ibig, nais) [like] mo?

2. (Kailangan, nais, ibig) [need] namin ng malamig na tubig.

3. Bakit (ayaw, ibig, gusto) [doesn't like] niya ng halo-halo?

4. (Dapat, nais, ayaw) [should] nasa bahay na ang mga bata.5. Ano ang (ibig, puwede, dapat) [want] kainin ng bisita?

# Describing what you want done

# Dialogue 2

Bill Cook is at the barber's. He is describing to the barber the haircut he wants.

Barber Sir, ano pong gupit ang gusto ninyo? Bill Gusto ko hindi masyadong mahaba.

Barber Ibig po ba ninyo hanggang itaas ng batok?
Bill Puwede na, pero hindi ko gusto ang crew cut.

Barber Nais po ba ninyo maikli sa tabi?

Bill Oo. Pero kailangan medyo makapal sa tuktok.

Barber Okay lang po. Huhugasan ko lang po ang inyong buhok.

Bill O sige, gusto ko rin ng konting masahe.

Barber Opo sir. Bill Salamat.

Barber Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ano pong gupit	what (kind of) haircut
sa tabi	at the sides
hindi masyado(ng)	not very
mahaba	long
ibig po ba ninyo	do you want
hanggang itaas	reaching the top
batok	nape
puwede na	will suffice
gusto ko rin	I'd also want
hindi ko gusto	I don't like
nais po ba ninyo	do you want
medyo	slightly
maikli	short
makapal	thick
sa tuktok	at the top
huhugasan ko lang	I'll just wash
ang inyong buhok	your hair
konting masahe	a little massage

#### Translation

Barber Sir, what kind of haircut would you like?

Bill I like it not too long.

Barber Would you like it just above the nape of the neck?

Bill That would do, but I don't want a crew cut.

Barber Would you like it to be short at the sides?

Bill Yes. But it needs to be thick on top.

Barber That's OK sir. I just have to wash your hair.

Bill OK, I'd also want a massage.

Barber Yes sir.
Bill Thank you.

Barber You're welcome sir.

# Exercise 3 Writing and speaking

Sagutin sa Tagalog (respond in Tagalog):

- 1. Anong klaseng gupit ang gusto ni Bill?
- 2. Gusto ba ni Bill ng crew cut?
- 3. Saan dapat maikli ang gupit?
- 4. Ano muna ang gagawin ng barbero?
- 5. Ano pa ang gusto ni Bill na gagawin ng barbero?

# **Tanguage** skills

## 2 More about pseudo-verbs

Since kailangan, gusto, ibig, nais, maaari, puwede, ayaw and dapat are considered as action words, it is clear that they have to be used in connection with a word which identifies those actually 'doing' the 'action' ('subjects' or, perhaps more appropriately, we can refer to them as 'actors').

In Tagalog, the general rule is as follows: pseudo-verbs take only ng form 'actors'. The ng form consists of the following: ni (of / singular – personal), nina (of / plural – personal), ko (my), mo (your), niya (his / her), namin (our / exclusive), natin (our / inclusive), ninyo (your / plural), nila (their), nito (of this), niyan (of that), noon (of that over there) and ng (of). These pseudo-verbs may also need an object or objects.

Remember the difference between a definite and an indefinite object? A definite object is always preceded by the word 'the', whereas an indefinite object is always preceded by the word 'a'. The connecting word used with an indefinite object is **ng** whereas **ang** is used for definite objects. Although this may sound horribly complicated, try not to feel intimidated by the jargon. Look carefully at the table below and then study the examples:

Pseudo-verb	Actor	Actor Obje		ct	
	A	Definite B	or	indefinite C	
kailangan (ng) gusto ibig nais puwede ayaw dapat maaari (Note: ko + ka = kita)	ni,nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin ninyo, nila, nito niyan, noon ng + noun	(ang) si sir ka, siya, ka tayo, kayo ito, iyan, iy ang + nou	ami ,sila yon	(ng) same as A	

To produce a pseudo-verb sentence: 1. Choose a pseudo-verb. 2. Choose an 'actor' from column A. 3. Choose a definite object from column 'B' 'or' 4. Choose an indefinite object from column C.

The basic formula is as follows:

Pseudo-verb +A + B or C = sentence

Look at the following example sentences. Note the differences between a pseudo-verb and actor used in connection with a definite object, then with an indefinite object.

Pseudo-verb	Actor	Indefinite object	Definite object
Ayaw	ni Judy	ng hilaw na man	gga
Judy doesn't lil	ke unripe mango	es	P Sallwest
Ayaw	ni Judy		ang hilaw na mangga
Judy doesn't lik	ke the unripe ma	ngo	
Gusto	mo [ba]		ito?
Do you want/li	ke/Would you wa	nt/like this?	
Gusto	mo [ba]	nito?	
Do yu want/like	e Would you wan	t/like some of this?	
Kailangan	ko	ng bagong sapato	s .
I need a new (p	air of) shoes		
Kailangan ko			ang bagong sapatos
I need the new	(pair of) shoes		

#### Did you notice ...?

The first example could be literally translated as 'doesn't like of Judy unripe mangoes'. However, as explained earlier, all pseudo-verbs require **ng** form actors. Although these **ng** form actors are required in Tagalog, we do not need to translate them into English. The correct translation of the sentence thus reads, Judy doesn't like unripe mangoes.

# Exercise 4

Match up columns A (pseudo-verb with **ng** actor) and B (definite / indefinite object) correctly. When you have done this, use a preposition of time or space from the box to expand the sentence further.

Example:

A B Place
Gusto namin ng malamig na Pepsi sa bahay

A (pseudo-verb with 'actor') B (definite or indefinite object)

Gusto ni Tessie magpagupit

Kailangan nila ng malamig na kape
Nais po ba ninyo ang bagong kotse
Hindi ko gusto (ng) ng katulong
Ayaw ng mga bisita ng aking tulong

# Exercise 5

Fill in the space with a pseudo-verb and then translate your sentence into English.

1. \_\_\_\_ mo ba ng lapis (pencil)?

2. \_\_\_\_ bumili ni Baby ng saging (banana) sa palengke. Translation:

3. Bakit mo \_\_\_\_\_ ng malaking pisara (blackboard)? Translation:

4.	Sino ang	mong isama (go with you) sa sin	e?
	Translation:	of Manufacture without provided as in the St	

5. \_\_\_\_ mo ba ng malamig (cold) na Pepsi? Translation:

# Dialogue 3

Louise Cook is at the hairdresser's. She is discussing hairstyles with the hairdresser (HD).

HD Maganda po ang buhok ninyo ma'am, Ano po ang gusto ninyong gawin ko?

Louise Puwede bang cut, and blow dry?

HD Maaari po. Gusto po ba ninyo ng maikli?
Louise Bagay ba sa akin ang maikling gupit?

HD Opo. Babagay po sa inyo. Maganda po sa inyo ang

maikling buhok.

Louise Mas bagay yata sa akin ang mahaba. HD Bagay po sa inyo ang mahaba at maikli.

Louise O sige, maikli.

HD Okay po. Huhugasan ko muna ang buhok ninyo.

Louise Salamat.

**HD** Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
maikling buhok	short hair
ang buhok ninyo	your hair
ang mahaba	a longer one
gawin ko	I'd do
puwede ba(ng)?	is it possible?
maaari po	it's possible (formal)
bagay ba sa akin	does it suit me
ang maikling gupit	short cut
babagay po sa inyo	it will suit you
mas bagay	suits better
huhugasan ko muna	I will wash first
maganda sa inyo	beautiful/nice on you

#### **Translation**

HD You're hair is pretty madam. What would you like me to do?

Louise Can I have a 'cut and blow dry'?

HD 't's possible ma'am, would you like a short cut?

Louise Does a short cut suit me?

HD Yes ma'am, it would suit you. A short cut would be nice

on you.

Louise I think a longer (one) is prettier.

HD Long hair and short hair both suit you.

Louise OK, a short one.

HD OK ma'am. I'll have to wash your hair first.

Louise Thank you.

HD Don't mention it.

# Exercise 6

Try playing the part of the hairdresser. Based on the dialogue, tell Mrs Cook the following:

1. Her hair is very long.

2. That long hair suits her too.

3. You'll have to wash her hair.

More words used at the barber shop / hairdresser can be found in the vocabulary box.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
magpakulot	to have a perm
magpagupit	to have a cut
putulin/gupitin	to cut (the hair)
putulan/gupitan	to give the hair/person a cut
ı-set	to set the hair
gunting	scissors
tuwalya	towel
silya	chair
tuwid ra buhok	straight hair
minamanikyur	being given a manicure
pinipedikyur	being given a pedicure

#### Exercise 7

Listen carefully to the tape. You will hear three different people explaining to their hairdresser / barber what they want. Use Dialogue 3 and vocabulary boxes to help you understand. Write down on the task sheet what each customer is asking for:

o's Unisex Hair Salon
476 Pereira Street  Quezon City
Phone 01915-5550
Date: March 19, 2000
Din Charles and Aller
vice of setting it has a conservation of
s dinoses unusandones.
<ul> <li>Juski hoje ki pod reterovojašti.</li> </ul>
Lt.

# Exercise 8 Understanding and speaking

You are off to the stylist to have your own hair cut. Listen to the tape and respond to your stylist's questions:

Stylist Magandang umaga po. Welcome sa Toto Mario's.

Ikaw (Say good morning)

Stylist Ano po ang maitutulong ko sa inyo?

Ikaw (Tell him you want to have your hair cut)

Stylist Ibig n'yo na po bang magpagupit ngayon o gumawa ng

appointment para bukas?

Ikaw (Tell him you would like it now, if possible)

Stylist Aba opo. Gusto rin po ba ninyong hugasan ko ito?

Ikaw (Tell him no thank you. You just want it cut)
Stylist Ibig po ba ninyo mahabang gupit o maikli?

Ikaw (Tell him you want it cut short)
Stylist Ibig rin po ba ninyo ng masahe?

Ikaw (Tell him politely you just want the haircut)

Stylist Okay lang po sir.

Ikaw (Say thank you very much)

#### Tips

- 1. Don't forget to tip 10-15%
- 2. Ask if they have worked with non-Asian hair before (if you are non-Asian)
- 3. Ask them to repeat what you have requested (to make sure they have understood)
- 4. Stylists often love to chat. Don't lose the opportunity to practice your Tagalog!

# Language skills!

## 3 More on the sa preposition

During the conversation between Louise Cook and the hairdresser, the hairdresser said: Babagay po sa inyo. Maganda po sa inyo and maikling buhok. It will suit you ma'am. A short cut would be nice on you. In this example, the word 'sa' was used in yet another way. It wasn't used as a preposition of time or place, but rather with the describing word maganda. Sa can also be used with adjectives. For example: Mabait sa akin si Cora. Cora is nice to me. Mabuti sa kanila ang mga guro. The teachers are

good to them. Mapagmahal si Jonathan sa mga kapatid niya. Jonathan is affectionate to his brothers. When sa is used as an ordinary preposition, then it is translated into English as either to, for, on, in, into, about, or at.

#### Some further examples:

1. Tagalog: Malaki sa iyo ang blusa mo English: Your blouse is big on you

2. Tagalog: Maliit sa bata ang sapatos

English: The shoes are small on the child

3. Tagalog: Maluwang kay Larry ang sombrerong ito

English: This hat is loose (big) on Larry

4. Tagalog: Mabuti raw sa iyo ang gamot

English: Apparently, the medicine is good for you

# Exercise 9

Why don't you see how much you have remembered – choose the correct answer from the box:

1. Magalang \_\_\_\_\_ (to the old people) si Rosita.

2. Mabuti \_\_\_\_\_\_ (to you) ang magpahinga.

3. Malaki yata \_\_\_\_\_ (on him) ang tsinelas.

4. Hindi ba maliit \_\_\_\_\_\_ (on me) ang pantalong ito?

5. Mabait \_\_\_\_\_ (to us) ang bisita ni Margaret.

6. Masyadong mahaba \_\_\_\_\_\_ (on her) ang damit na ito.

#### One-minute phrases

Matigas ang ulo (mah-tee-gahs ahng oolaw) Literally; hard the head. Meaning hardheaded/stubborn. For example: Matigas ang ulo ni Boy. Boy is stubborn.

Hindi yata pupuwede (heen-dee yah-tah poo-poo-weh-deh) Literally; not I think it will do Meaning I don't think it's possible./ I don't think it can.

Pagbutihin mo (pahg-boo-tee-heen maw). Meaning make it good. This phrase is commonly used when offering encouragement. For example: Pagbutihin mo ang pag-aaral

para maging doktor ka pagdating ng araw. Study hard so that you'll become a doctor in the future.

Lakad-takbo (lah-kahd tahk-baw) Literally; walk-run. Meaning a brisk walking pace. For example: Lakad-takbo ang ginawa ko para maabot ko ang huling biyahe ng tren. I half walked, half-ran in order to catch the last train.

Mabilis pa sa alas-singko (mah-bee-lees pah sah ah-lahs-seeng-kaw). Literally, faster than five o'clock. This phrase goes back to the time in the 1950s and 1960s when Filipino employees in Manila used to listen out for the five o'clock whistle from the port area of the city. The whistle signalled the end of the shift for the dock workers. Anyone finishing their work before the five o'clock whistle was deemed by his or her workmates to be faster than the five o'clock [whistle].

# (i) Cultural tip

Whether you want to make an appointment with a hairdresser or buy something from a department store, you may sometimes find it difficult to attract the attention of a shop assistant. Invariably, they know that you are there but are hesitant to give you eye contact or approach you because of a lack of confidence in their own English. The assumption is always that foreigners do not understand Tagalog. This is just shyness and can easily be overcome with a warm and friendly smile, coupled with a few words of Tagalog. Never be afraid to try out your Tagalog. Even a few words will go a long way towards giving you a positive and memorable experience of the Philippines.

# 12 BAGAY BA SA AKIN? Does this suit me?

#### In this unit you will learn how to

- try something on in a store
- use the passive
- describe the weather

# Trying something on in a store

# Dialogue 1

Louise Cook is trying something on in the changing room of a departmental store.

Store	Gusto po ba ninyo iyan? Magsukat pa po kayo ng iba.
assistant	Palda at blusa po kung ayaw ninyo ng diretso. May
	ibang kulay rin po. Magsukat po kayo ng palda at
	blues

Louise Sige. (Isinukat) Medyo masikip yata ang blusa pero maluwang naman ang palda. Gusto kong pumili pa.

Store Sige po. Pumili pa po kayo. Ito pong may bulaklak?

assistant Diretso po ito.

Louise Napakaganda niyan at kung tama ang sukat, bibili ako ng dalawa. Gusto ko ring bumili ng bandana.

Store Marami po kaming bandana. Nasa kabilang assistant departamento po ang mga ito.

Louise Maraming salamat.
Store Wala pong anuman.

assistant

#### Talasalitaan Vocabulary gusto po ba ninyo do vou like/would vou like magsukat pa try some more ng iba other ones may palda at blusa we have blouses and skirts kung ayaw ninyo if you don't like diretso straight (dress) ibang kulay rin other colours also bibili ako I will buy isinukat tried it on medvo masikip slightly small ng bandana a scarf pero maluwang but loose pumili pa choose some more may bulaklak with flowers napakaganda so pretty nivan that kung tama if right ang sukat the size ang kamay the arms nasa kabila(ng) departamento in the department store

#### Translation

Store
assistant
Do you like that ma'am? Why not try a few others.
We have skirts and blouses if you don't want a dress.
They come in other colours too. Why not try on a skirt and a blouse ma'am.

Louise
All right. (trying) I think the blouse is a little tight but

on the other hand the skirt is loose.

Okay ma'am. Please try on some others. How about

Store Okay ma'am. Please try on some others. How about assistant this flowery dress?

Louise That is so pretty, and if it's my size, I will take two. I

would also like to buy a scarf.

Store We have many scarves. They're in the department next door.

Louise Thank you very much.

Store You're welcome. assistant

# Exercise 1

Drawing from what you have learned so far, replace the words in italics with a different adjective, verb, noun or pronoun, to form coherent Tagalog sentences.

Example: Gusto po ba ninyo iyan?

Answer: Gusto po ba ninyo ito?

- 1. May palda at blusa po kung ayaw ninyo ng diretso.
- 2. Magsukat po kayo ng palda at blusa.
- 3. Medyo masikip yata ito.
- 4. Ito pong may bulaklak?
- Napakaganda niyan at kung mabuti ang sukat, bibili ako ng dalawa.
- 6. Gusto ko ring bumili ng bandana.
- 7. Marami po kaming bandana.

# M Language skills

#### 1 Verbs: Active voice / passive voice Transitive / intransitive

When forming a simple sentence, action words play a key role: they let us know what is being done. These action words are known as verbs. Verbs have two distinct ways of indicating an action, each giving a different flavour or 'voice' to the sentence. We can call these distinct flavours the active voice and the passive voice. The 'voice' of a sentence tells us something about the relationship between: 1) the subject of the verb; 2) the 'doer' of the verbal action; 3) the person or thing that the verbal action is done to.

We use the active voice when the subject of the verb is the 'doer' of the action. The active voice is used in most English speech and writing, because we usually want to inform our listeners or our readers about who or what carried out the action of the verb. For example: Roy read a book yesterday. Jack and Jill carried a pail of water. I bought a pair of slippers.

The passive voice is used when the subject is not the person or thing 'doing' the action of the verb. It is the person or thing that is acted upon by the verb. For example: The ball was thrown by the boy. The ribbon was cut by the mayor. These words were said by him. We also use the passive voice to direct our listener's attention to the most important part of our message. The passive voice can be used when we do not know who carries out the action expressed by the verb. For example: The food has been eaten.

Before moving on to um verbs, it is important for us to understand the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs. Very simply, a transitive verb is a verb that has a direct object. For example: Bumili si Roy ng sombrero (bumili is the verb while ng sombrero is the direct object). Roy bought a hat. An intransitive verb, by way of contrast, is a verb that has no direct object. For example: Namili si Mary. Mary went shopping. Some verbs are always transitive (with an object), others are always intransitive (without an object), but just to keep us on our toes, many verbs are used both transitively and intransitively. We will further explore both transitive and intransitive verbs as we go along.

#### 2 The um verb

We now turn to the first active verb type, known as the **um** verb. The **um** verb type forms major transitive and intransitive verbs. There are two major ways of forming **um** verbs: 1) by adding **um** in front of a verb stem or 'root' that begins with a vowel. (A verb root is a verb in its simplest form. For example, the verb **kumain** to eat. The root / stem of **kumain**, is **kain** = eat); or 2) by inserting **um** inside a verb root that begins with a consonant (non-vowel). Look at some examples.

How to change the tense of an **um** verb stem beginning with a vowel: Example: Verb stem: **alis** (*leave*)

um + alis	= umalis (to leave)	infinitive
a + alis	= aalis	future
um + a + alis	= umaalis	present
um + alis	= umalis	past

Note: Did you notice that in the um verb the infinitive and past tense look the same? They are distinguished only by their use. While the infinitive is only used in commands, suggestions and

requests, (For example: Umalis ka! 'You go'), the past tense usually takes a time element in the sentence (for example: Kumain kami kagabi, We ate last night).

#### Four major ways of changing verb tenses in Tagalog

- 1. Infinitive (used in commands, suggestions and requests only)
  For example:
  - Command: Huwag kang tumayo diyan! Don't [you] stand there! Suggestion: Kumain na tayo. Let's eat now
  - Request: Puwede bang kumuha ka ng plato sa kusina? Could you fetch a plate from the kitchen?
- Future: will/shall + infinitive, the future perfect tense (will have + past participle), be going to + infinitive the future progressive tense (will be + present participle)
  - For example: Uuwi ako. I am going home. I will/shall go home
- 3. Present: the simple present tense, the present progressive tense For example: **Kumakain** ako ng gulay araw-araw. *I eat vegetables every day*
- 4. Past: the simple past tense, the past progressive tense Example: **Bumili** si Ronald ng sorbetes. *Ronald bought some ice-cream*
- Listen to the pronunciation of each of the following verbs, then try to pronounce each word yourself, without the help of the tape.

Verb root	Meaning	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
akyat	climb rely upon drink cry go home borrow money	umakyat	aakyat	umaakyat	umakyat
asa		umasa	aasa	umaasa	umasa
inom		uminom	iinom	umiinom	uminom
iyak		umiyak	iiyak	umiiyak	umiyak
uwi		umuwi	uuwi	umuuwi	umuwi
utang		umutang	uutang	umuutang	umutang

How to change the tense of an um verb stem beginning with a consonant:

Example: Verb stem: basa (read)

b + um + asa	= bumasa (to read)	infinitive
ba + basa	= babasa	future
b + um + abasa	= bumabasa	present
b + um + asa	= bumasa	past

Listen to the pronunciation of each of the following verbs, then try to pronounce each word yourself, without the help of the tape.

Verb root	Meaning	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
bili	buy	bumili	bibili	bumibili	bumili
kain	eat	kumain	kakain	kumakain	kumain
kuha	get	kumuha	kukuha	kumukuha	kumuha
gawa	make	gumawa	gagawa	gumagawa	gumawa
hiram	borrow	humiram	hihiram	humihiram	humiram
lakad	walk	lumakad	lalakad	lumalakad	lumakad

More verbs can be found listed at the back of this book.

This is the formula:

Verb	+ actor
Kumain	si Louie
Ate	Louie

Louie ate

Verb	+ actor	+ object
Kumain	si Louie	ng sorbetes
Ate	Louie	ice cream
4 3 14 1		

Louie ate (some) ice cream

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ place
Kumain	si Louie	ng sorbetes	sa restawran
Ate	Louie	ice cream	at the restaurant
7		\$	

Louie ate (some) ice cream at the restaurant

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ place	+ time
Kumain	si Louie	ng sorbetes		kahapon
Ate	Louie		at the restaurant	
Louie ate	(some) ice cr		taurant yesterday	

Did you notice how you are able to expand a very simple sentence easily? You can lengthen a sentence by merely adding a preposition of time or place or an adverb etc.

## W

#### Exercise 2

Using the sentence structure provided (verb + actor + object + place + time), build a Tagalog sentence around each of the following verbs. Use the vocabulary box provided to help you:

- 1. Bibili
- 2. Kumakain
- 3. Gumawa
- 4. Humihiram
- 5. Iinom

Talasalitaan	ay and amount.	Vocabulary	ire melal.	No mission
kahapon		yesterday		877.43
ngayon		today		111,757,50
humihiram		borrowing		
ng kape		coffee		
kumakain		eating		
iinom		will drink		
ng laruan		toy		
araw-araw		every day		- Trail-ray
gumawa		to make		eduction 27
bibili		will buy		and the same of

#### A note about recent action

There is a minor, yet important, aspect of active Tagalog verbs known as the recent action. The recent action is used to express events in the very recent past. It is formed by prefixing ka to the future tense of the verb. For example, the future tense of the um verb alis is aalis. To form the recent action aspect of the verb, we simply add ka + aalis = kaaalis. Remember, however, that the recent action takes the ng form as the 'doer' of the action. In order to underline how recent the action is, the word lang (only/just/only just) is always used with the recent action form. For example, Kaaalis lang ni Stephen at ni Amy, Amy and Stephen have only just left. Huwag na tayong magmeryenda, kakakain lang natin ng tanghalian, Let's not have a snack as we've only just eaten lunch. Kadarating mo lang ba?, Have you just arrived?

# Asking about alterations

# Dialogue 2

Louise Cook is at the dressmaker's.

Louise Magandang hapon.

Modista Magandang hapon po naman.

Louise Bumili ako ng telang pambistida sa palengke, at gusto

kong magpatahi ng bestida.

Modista Aba opo. Nasaan po ang tela n'vo? Louise Heto. Ayokong masyadong maikli ito.

Modista Hindi po. Puwede po bang sukatan ko kavo?

Louise Aba oo naman.

Modista Ang sukat po ng dibdib ay tatlumpu't anim na pulgada.

Ang baywang po ay dalawampu't walong pulgada. Ang hips po ay tatlumpu't walong pulgada. Ang manggas po ay walong pulgada. Ang balikat ay labing-anim na pulgada. Ang haba ng palda ay dalawampu't apat na

pulgada. Iyan lang po.

Louise Kailan ko maaaring makuha ang damit?

Modista Sa Biyernes po. Mga alas kwatro nang hapon.

Louise Maraming salamat.

Modista Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ang sukat ko	my measurement
bumili	bought
telang pambistida	dress material
haba	length
sukatan	to measure
pulgada	inches
paikliin	be shortened
nasaan	where
heto	here
ayoko(ng)	don't like
sukat ng dibdib	bust line
palengke	market
kailan	when
magpatahi	have clothes made
bukas nang hapon	tomorrow afternoon
baywang	waistline

hips
sleeves
shoulders
skirt
to collect/get

#### Translation

Louise Good afternoon.

Good afternoon to you, too. Dressmaker

I bought some cloth at the market and I would like Louise

to have a dress made up.

Yes ma'am. Where is your cloth? Dressmaker Louise Here. I don't want it to be too short.

No ma'am. Can I take your measurements? Dressmaker

Louise Of course.

Your bust line is 36. Your waist line is 28. Your Dressmaker

> hips are 38. Sleeve length is 8 inches. Armhole is 14 inches. Shoulders are 16. Skirt length is 24

inches. That's all ma'am.

When will I be able to collect the dress? Louise

Dressmaker On Friday ma'am, at about 4.00 in the afternoon.

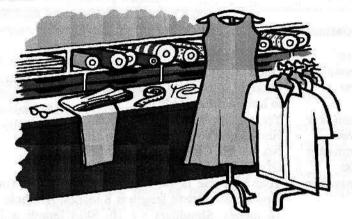
Thank you very much. Louise You're welcome. Dressmaker

Some useful words for a visit to the sastre (tailor) can be found in the vocabulary box.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
medida	tape measure
sinulid	thread
karayom	needle
iklian	to make short
habaan	to make long
lakihan	to make big
liitan	to make small
palitan	change
terno	go together
itupi	to fold
kalsahan	to lower the hemline



Listen to the list of items on the tape. The tailor has misplaced his spectacles and can't see where he has left things. Can you help him find them? With a pen or pencil, circle each item mentioned as you hear it.



# Exercise 4

How do you say the following in Tagalog?

- 1. You want a green skirt.
- 2. You don't want a long skirt.
- 3. You need it on Monday.
- 4. Your skirt is at home.

# **Language** skills

# 3 Verbalisation of adjectives

Louise Cook used the word umikli in her conversation with the dressmaker, ayokong masyadong umikli ito. Umikli is derived from the adjective maikli (short). In Tagalog, adjectives can also become action words (verbs). When this happens, the resulting meaning of the newly formed action word is 'to become \_\_\_\_'. To do this, simply drop the prefix 'ma' from the adjective, e.g., maikli (short), add 'um' = um + ikli = umikli (to become shorter). When

the adjective root begins with a vowel (e.g. asim, 'sourness'), simply add 'um' before the root word to produce the infinitive (e.g. um + asim = umasim to become sour). When the adjective root begins with a consonant (e.g. ganda beauty), then 'um' is placed after the first letter (e.g. g + um + anda = gumanda, to become beautiful). Here are some more examples:

Example: Adjective stem: sama (badness) source: masama (bad)

s + um + ama = sumama (to become/ get worse)	infinitive
sa + sama = sasama (will become/ get worse)	future
s + um + asama = sumasama (becoming/ getting wo	rse) present
s + um + ama = sumama (became/ got worse)	past

Listen to the pronunciation of each of the following verbalised adjectives on the tape. Why not try to repeat them without the help of the tape.

Adjective	Meaning	Infinitive	Future	Present	Past
(ma)laki (ma)ganda (ma)liit (ma)sarap	big pretty small delicious	lumaki gumanda lumiit	lalaki gaganda liliit	lumalaki gumaganda lumiliit	lumaki gumanda lumiit
(ma)layo (ma)buti (ma)linis	far good clean	sumarap lumayo bumuti luminis	sasarap lalayo bubuti lilinis	sumasarap lumalayo bumubuti lumilinis	lumayo bumuti

A further list can be found at the back of this book.

Some example sentences:

Tagalog: Gumaganda ang hardin ni Patricia

Literal: becoming more beautiful the garden of Patricia English: Patricia's garden is becoming more beautiful

Tagalog: Lumilinis ang kotse mo

Literal: becoming cleaner the car your English: Your car is becoming cleaner

Tagalog: Hindi **bumuti** ang panahon Literal: (did)not improve the weather English: *The weather did not improve* 

Tagalog: Bumibilis yata ang takbo ng relos mo

Literal: becoming fast I think the running of watch your

English: I think your watch is running fast

Provide the correct tense of the following verbalised adjectives. The stem of each adjective is given in the bracket:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ang problema ni Jose araw-araw. (laki, present)

2. Ang bahay ni Aling Maria ay \_\_\_\_\_\_. (ganda, present)

3. Hindi ba \_\_\_\_\_ ang kotse ni Les? (linis, past)

4. Kailangang \_\_\_\_\_\_ tayo sa gulo. (layo, infinitive)

# Exercise 6

See how many verbalised adjectives you can find in the crossword.

		S	Α	K	A	L	I	D
	L	U	М	Α	L	A	К	1
L	U	М	I	w	A	N	Α	G
	M	A		Α	Н	A	S	Н
Н	I	R	Α	P		P	М	A
I	N	Α	K	В	A	Y	Α	A
	A	P	A	N	D	Α		
Α	w		Т	Α	N	0	T	N

# Describing the weather

# Dialogue 3

The weather is bad. Bill, Louise and Roy Cook are talking about it in their hotel room.

Bill Mukhang sumasama ang panahon. Babagyo yata! Louise Kagabi, umulan nang malakas at humangin din.

Roy Noong isang linggo, kahit umuulan, sumisikat ang araw.

Louise Mabuti kung ganooon.

Bill Mahirap kasi dito sa Pilipinas, kapag umulan, babaha

kaagad.

Roy Dumidilim na naman ang langit.

Louise Mabuti yata dito muna tayo sa hotel hanggang sa

gumanda ang panahon.

Bill Sang-ayon sa radyo, bubuti raw ang panahon bago gumabi.

Roy Magbabasa ako ng aklat.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
umulan	to rain
sumasama	becoming/getting worse
ang panahon	the weather
babagyo	there will be a typhoon
na naman	again
ang langit	the sky
umulan	rained
humangin	was windy
noong isang linggo	last week
kahit	even though
umuulan	raining
sumisikat	shining
ang araw	the sun
gumabi	to become night
kung ganoon	if that's the case
mahirap	difficult
kapag	if/when
babaha	will flood
kaagad	immediately
dumidilim	becoming dark

dito muna	here (for the moment)
hanggang	until
gumanda	to become fine
sang-ayon sa	according to
radyo	radio
bubuti	will become better
bago	before
magbabasa	will read

#### Translation

Bill The weather seems to be getting worse. I think a typhoon is coming.

Louise Last night, it rained hard and there was wind too.

Roy The other week, even though it was raining, the sun was shining.

Louise It's good (when it's) like that.

Bill The trouble here in the Philippines is that when it rains there are floods.

Roy The sky is getting darker again.

Louise It might be a good idea to stay in the hotel until the

weather settles.

Bill According to the radio, the weather will be fine by

tonight.

Roy I will read a book.

# Exercise 7

The following sentences need to be expanded. Can you add an adverb of time (e.g. **bukas**, *tomorrow*) or preposition (e.g. **sa** *in*, at) to expand each sentence? Use the vocabulary box provided to help you:

Example: Kumikidlat kanina add: pero hindi yata uulan.

- 1. Bumubuti ang panahon kasi
- 2. Umuulan nang malakas lagi
- 3. Hindi bumabaha sa Pilipinas kung
- 4. Lumiliwanag ba ang langit kahit na
- 5. Sasama ang panahon bago gumabi sapagka't

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
kasi	because
lagi	always
kung	if/when
kahit na	even though
sapagka't	because

# M Language skills

#### 4 Verbalisation of acts of nature

Most Tagalog words describing acts of nature can also be made into verbs. For example, if the sun is shining, Filipinos merely say 'Umaaraw!' (from araw = the sun). If there is a flash of lightning, they exclaim: 'Kumikidlat!' (from kidlat = lightning). Umulan kasi kaya hindi kami sumimba, It rained that's why we didn't go to church. The following list gives further examples of other verbalised acts of nature. Notice that they also form their tenses in the same manner as the um verb.

#### Examples:

	Infinitive & past tense	A Paris of the last	Present continuous	Future
baha – flood araw – sun ulan – rain kidlat – lightning kulog – thunder sikat – shine lubog – set	bumaha umaraw umulan kumidlat kumulog sumikat lumubog	to flood to shine (sun only) to rain to flash (lightning) to thunder to shine (sun, moon) to set (sun, moon)	bumabaha umaaraw umuulan kumikidlat kumukulog sumisikat lumulubog	babaha aaraw uulan kikidlat kukulog sisikat lulubog
bagyo – typhoon hangin – wind ambon – drizzle lindol – earthquake	bumagyo humangin umambon	to have a typhoon to become windy to drizzle to have an e'quake	bumabagyo humahangin umaambon lumilindol	babagyo hahangin aambon lilindol

#### Changing the tenses of the um acts of nature:

Infinitive Future Present Past umulan uulan umulan umulan lt's going to rain It is raining It rained

Sample sentences:

Example:

Tagalog: Sumisikat ang araw sa silangan Literal: Shine/shining the sun in the east English: The sun shines in the east

Tagalog: Bumabagyo lagi sa may China Sea Literal: Typhoon always near the China Sea

English: There's always a typhoon near the China Sea

Tagalog: Kapag umaambon may bahag-hari daw Literal: If/when drizzling there is rainbow apparently English: Apparently, when it drizzles, a rainbow appears

# Exercise 8

Basing your answers on the verb in italics, supply an appropriate reply to the following questions:

1. Hindi ba bumabaha sa Maynila?

2. Lumulubog ba ang araw sa silangan?

3. Mga anong oras sumisikat ang araw sa Pilipinas?

4. Wala bang ingay kung kumukulog at kumikidlat?

5. Umaaraw ba kung sumisikat ang buwan?

# Exercise 9

Look at the pictures showing some acts of nature. Can you say them in Tagalog using the tense or form indicated?



# Ex

#### Exercise 10

Listen to the radio weather forecast on the tape. In your own words, try to give the following weather forecast. Use the vocabulary box to help you:

Today's weather: Cloudy, possible rain in northern Luzon.
Tonight: Warm

Tomorrow: Plenty of sunshine

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
makulimlim	cloudy
maaaring umulan	it might rain
hilagang Luzon	northern Luzon
mainit	warm
mainit ang araw	plenty of sunshine
mamayang gabi	tonight
sa hapon	in the afternoon

#### **One-minute phrases**

Ilista sa tubig (ee-lees-tah sah too-beeg) Literally, list in water. Meaning not to make a note of something, to forget all about it. This phrase is commonly used in connection with a 'conveniently forgotten' debt.

Di-mahulugang karayom (dee mah-hoo-loo-gang kah-rah-yawm) literally, cannot drop a needle Meaning a crowded area/ a tightly packed space. For example: Napakaraming tao noong dumalaw ang Papa sa Luneta at ito'y di mahulugang karayom. Luneta was so crowded when the Pope visited that it was so difficult to move around (find a needle).

Sisikat din ang araw (see-see-kaht deen ahng ah-rao) Literally, the sun will also rise. Similar in meaning to the English proverb: Every cloud has a silver lining. Kalimutan mo na ang nangyari sa iyong pananim dahil sa baha. May kasabihan tayong: sisikat din ang araw, Try to forget what happened to your crops because of the flood. We have a saying: every cloud has a silver lining.

Isukat mo nga (ee-soo-kaht maw ngah) Literal and true meaning why don't you try it on? Trying an article of clothing etc. something on in a shop.

**Bahag-hari** (bah-hahg-haa-ree) Literally, the king's loin cloth. This is the Tagalog word for rainbow!

# (i) Cultural tip

Dress sense is very important in Filipino culture. Formal occasions require formal clothes. If you are unsure what to wear, don't be afraid to ask your Filipino friends for advice. If you are attending weddings, business meetings or baptisms, why not invest in a Filipino 'Barong Tagalog'. This is Filipino national dress and very acceptable as formal attire. Good-quality material is easily obtainable. There are many tailor shops where they can take your measurements and make the garment up for you. Made-to-measure suits and dresses are generally very good value for money in the Philippines.

# SA ISTASYON NG BUS At the bus station

# In this unit you will learn how to

- ask about tickets, destinations, departures and arrivals
- express days of the week, etc.
- use mag and ma verbs

# Asking about tickets, destinations and departures

#### Dialogue 1

The Cook family are going to the north of Luzon. They are at the ticket office enquiring about departures.

Bill Magandang umaga. Gusto kong bumili ng tiket para sa

tatlo papuntang Banaue.

Opisyal Magandang umaga po naman. Ibig po ba ninyo tiket

na papunta lamang doon o balikan?

Bill Kung puwede balikan at sa Biyernes ika-lima ng Abril

ang balik.

Opisyal Kailan po ninyo ibig magbiyahe?

Bill Kung puwede sa Martes.

Opisyal Sandali lang po at titingnan ko.

Bill OK lang, maghihintay ako.

Opisyal Tatlo po ang biyahe sa Martes, ika-dalawa ng Abril. Ang una ay aalis sa alas 4.30 nang umaga, tapos alas

Ang una ay aalis sa alas 4.30 nang umaga, tapos alas 10.30, at alas 2.30 nang hapon. Mabuti po ang alas 4.30 nang umaga kung maaari kayong magbiyahe nang

maaga.

Bill

Bill Oo. Puwede kaming magbiyahe nang maaga. Saan kami puwedeng mag-almusal?

Opisyal Hihinto po ang bus nang mga alas 7.30 sa Pampanga upang makapag-almusal kayo.

Mabuti kung ganoon.

Opisyal Eto po ang tiket ninyo para sa tatlong pasahero.

Maligayang paglalakbay po!

Bill Maraming salamat. Opisyal Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
balikan	return
kung puwede sana	if possible
dating	arrival
gusto kong bumili	I want to buy
ng tiket	tickets
para sa tatlo	for three
papunta sa	going to
naman	too, also
hihinto	will stop
aalis	will go etc.
kung puwede sana	if possible
ang biyahe	the trip
sa araw	during the day
nang umaga	in the morning
tapos	afterwards/ then
nang hapon	in the afternoon
magbiyahe	to travel
maghintay	to wait
alis	departure
nang maaga	early
mag-almusal	to have breakfast
upang	in order to/ so that
makapag-almusal	can have breakfast
kung ganoon	if that's the case
eto po	here sir
tiket ninyo	your tickets
maligaya(ng)	happy
paglalakbay	trip

#### **Translation**

Bill Good morning. I'd like to buy tickets for three (persons) to Banaue.

Official Good morning sir. Do you want single tickets or return?

Return tickets, please if possible coming back on Friday
April 5.

Official When do you want to travel sir?

Bill If possible, on Tuesday.

Official Please wait sir while I check.

Bill Yes. I'll wait.

Official Sir, there are three trips on Tuesday April 2. The first is at 4.30 in the morning, then at 10.30 and at 2.30 in the afternoon. The 4.30 (departure) is the best (one) if you can travel early.

Bill Sure. We can travel early. Where can we have breakfast?

Official Sir, the bus is going to make a stop at 7.30 at Pampanga

so that you can have your breakfast.

Bill That's good.

Official Sir, here are your tickets for three passengers. Have a

good trip!

Bill Thank you very much.

Official You're welcome.

Other useful vocabulary for travelling can be found in the vocab box.

Vocabulary
passenger
ticket
fare
trip
single
will board
will alight/get off
change
seat
vacant

parahin to stop (a public vehicle) konduktor conductor drayber driver umangkas to get a lift siksikan packed to capacity mama term a passenger uses to call driver's attention barya change

# Exercise 1 Listening and understanding

Listen carefully once again to the conversation between Bill Cook and the clerk. Based on the dialogue, identify which of the following statements are true and which are false.

- 1. Gustong bumili ni Bill ng tiket papuntang Davao.
- 2. Kung puwede sana gustong umalis nang maaga ni Bill.
- 3. Sabi ng opisyal: 'Mag-almusal kayo at titingnan ko.'
- 4. Sabi ni Bill sa opisval: 'Maghihintay ako.'
- 5. Tatlo ang biyahe sa araw.
- 6. May biyahe sa gabi at maaga ito.
- 7. Hindi puwedeng magbiyahe sina Bill nang maaga.
- 8. Maaari silang mag-almusal nang maaga.
- 9. Sa Pampanga hihinto ang bus.
- 10. Hindi sila mag-aalmusal sa Pampanga.

# Exercise 2

Can you say the following sentences in the negative?

- 1. Gusto kong bumili ng tiket.
- Puwede bukas nang umaga.
- Humihinto ang bus nang mga alas 7.30.
- Malapit ang Babauae buhat sa Maynila.
- 5. Mabuti ang alas 4.30 nang umaga.

# Days, months and dates

In Dialogue 1, Bill Cook mentions that he wants to travel on Tuesday April 2. To give the date in Tagalog, simply use ika + Tagalog number. For example: ika-apat ng Disyembre = December 4.

Question: Kailan ang kaarawan mo? When is your birthday?

Answer: Sa ika-apat ng Disyembre. On December 4.

Here is a complete list of the days of the week and months of the year:

Days of the we	ek	Months of the	year
Lunes	Monday	Enero	January
Martes	Tuesday	Pebrero	February
Miyerkoles	Wednesday	Marso	March
Huwebes	Thursday	Abril	April
Biyernes	Friday	Mayo	May
Sabado	Saturday	Hunyo	June
Linggo	Sunday	Hulyo	July
		Agosto	August
		Septyembre	September
		Oktubre	October
		Nobyembre	November
		Disyembre	December

-		-
	Exercise	3
16,00	Liter Cloc	•

AT THE BUS STATION

What comes after	? Can you fill in	the blank	with	the
correct answer?				

- Miverkoles
- Agosto
- Oktubre Sabado
- Martes
- 6. Mayo
- 7. Biyernes

# **Exercise 4**

Can you translate the following into Tagalog? Use the vocabulary box provided to help you:

Example: July 4 Answer: Ika-apat ng Hulyo

- 1. His birthday is on August 30.
- 2. School begins on Monday.
- 3. We will be visiting you on Saturday, May 10.
- 4. The conference was last Tuesday, June 14.
- 5. We are going to the zoo on Sunday, September 3.
- 6. Are you leaving on Saturday?
- 7. Who is arriving on Thursday, January 5?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
simula	start	
bibisita	be visiting	
kumperensiya	conference	
pupunta	going	
aalis	leaving	
darating	arriving	
paaralan	school	

# **Language** skills

## 1 Mag verbs

Most Tagalog verbs begin with mag. Like the um verbs we met in Unit 12, mag verbs can also be transitive (with an object) or intransitive (without an object). You will remember that um verbs take either a prefix (an addition before the verb root), or an infix (an addition within the verb root). Mag verbs are easier in that they take only a prefix. Mag verbs also need an object. As with the um verbs, the connecting word 'ng' is used before the object. For example: Magbili ng bigas. Sell rice. Mag verbs need a subject, but they do not always need: 1) a time element; 2) a preposition; 3) an adverb.

The mag verb is very versatile in that while it forms both major transitive verbs (verbs with a direct object) and intransitive verbs (verbs without a direct object), it continues to carry the word that the verb suggests. For example: magtennis (to play tennis), maglaba (to wash clothes), magbihis (to put clothes on), magdasal (to pray) etc. Although most verb stems can be used with the mag prefix, it is important to remember that some verbs

are um verbs only, while some verbs are mag verbs only. Listen carefully to how each verb is used by native Tagalog speakers. Through listening and repeating what you hear, you will soon be able to distinguish between the different verb types. If you are unsure, check out the verb list at the back of this book or check your Tagalog dictionary.

The versatility of the MAG verb becomes clear when we see the variety of ways in which it can be used:

- 1. mag + noun, e.g. mag + bus = magbus, to go by bus
- 2. mag + noun designating a member of a profession, e.g. abogado (lawyer) = mag-abogado, to become a lawyer
- 3. **mag** + article of clothing, e.g. mag + kamiseta = magkamiseta, to wear a tee-shirt
- 4. mag + language, e.g. mag + Tagalog = magTagalog, to speak Tagalog
- 5. mag + item designated by the noun, e.g. magbunga, to bear fruit
- 6. mag + noun expressing action involving two or more actors, mag + salubong (greet one another) = magsalubong, to meet
- 7. mag + adjective, e.g. mag + mabagal (slow) = magmabagal, be slow in, mag + mayaman = magmayaman, to pretend to be rich
- 8. mag + times of day, e.g. mag + madaling-araw (dawn) magmadaling-araw, be dawn

Changing the tense of the **mag** verb is easy. Take for example the verb stem **laba** (wash clothes):

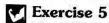
mag + laba	=	maglaba	infinitive (used only in requests, commands
			and suggestions)
mag + la+laba	=	maglalaba	future
*nag + la+laba	=	naglalaba	present
*nag + laba	=	naglaba	past
kapag + la + laba	=	kapaglalaba	recent action

(\*Note: the prefix mag is used in the infinitive and future tenses and changes to nag in the present and past tense.)

Here are a few commonly occurring mag verbs. Listen to how they are pronounced on the tape:

mag-ayos to arrange mag-alis to remove mag-abang to wait for someone mag-aral to study magbantay to guard magbigay to give magbili to sell magbintang to accuse magdasal to pray maghain to serve food on the table maghugas to wash maglaba to wash clothes maglakad to walk maglaro to play maglinis to clean magluto to cook magmana to inherit magmasid to watch

A further selection of mag verbs can be found at the back of this book.



Look at the pictures and try to find the correct verb to describe each activity? Give your answers in the mag verb form:





3.



#### A guide to expanding the mag sentence:

#### A) Transitive verbs (with object)

+ actor	+ object
si Jose	ng lumang alahas
Jose	old jewellery
	si Jose

Verb	+ actor	+ object	+ place
Nagluto	kami	ng pansit	sa bahay ni Lett

at Letty's home noodles Cooked

We cooked some noodles at Letty's home.

Verb	+ particle	+ actor	+ object	+ place + time
Nagdala	pala	sila	ng pagkain	sa party kagabi
Brought	so	they some	to the party	last night
		food		

So they brought some food to the party last night.

#### B) Intransitive verbs (without an object)

Verb	+ actor
Maglalaba	si Margaret
Will wash/ will be washing clothes	Margaret

Margaret will be washing clothes.

Qualifier/ Verb	+ actor	+ place and/or time
Hindi nagsalita	si Gener	sa pulong kahapon.
Did not talk/speak	Gener	at the meeting yesterday

Gener didn't talk/speak at the meeting yesterday.

Using the verb, form and scenario provided, see if you can do the following in Tagalog:

- 1. Suggest to a friend to play. (laro) (infinitive)
- 2. Say that you cleaned the car already. (linis) (past)
- 3. Say that Maria is washing the dishes. (hugas) (present)
- 4. Suggest to everyone you want to pray. (dasal) (infinitive)
- 5. Say that Lina and her friends will be cooking. (luto) (future)

#### Mag and recent action

Just to keep us on our toes, when using the recent action with mag verbs, we must be careful to remember that mag changes to pag. For example:

ka +	future	= recent action
ka +	maglalaro (will play)	= kapaglalaro
ka +	maglilinis (will clean)	= kapaglilinis
ka +	mag-aaral (will study)	= kapag-aaral

See Unit 12, page 169.

# Enquiring about arrivals

# Dialogue 2

Jobert is enquiring about the arrival of the Cook family on the bus from Banaue.

Johert Anong oras ang dating ng bus ngayon galing sa Baguio?

Manager Alas 7.45 po nang gabi.

Jobert Bakit, anong oras ba itong umalis buhat sa Baguio?

Manager Kanina pong alas 9.00 nang umaga. Jobert Saang mga lugar ba ito hihinto?

Manager Sa Ilocos po, sa, Tarlac, Pampanga at Bulacan.

Jobert Ganoon ba? Maraming salamat.

Manager Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
ang dating	the arrival	realised to entit
ngayon	today/now	
galing sa	from	
mga lugar	places	
bakit	why	
umalis	departed	

#### Translation

Jobert What time will the bus from Baguio arrive?

Manager Sir, 7.45 in the evening.

Jobert (Why) What time did it leave / depart from Baguio?

Manager A while ago at 9.00 this morning.

Jobert What places will it make a stopover?

Manager At Ilocos, Tarlac, Pampanga and Bulacan

Jobert Is that so? Thank you very much.

Manager You're welcome sir.

# Exercise 7

Use Dialogue 2 to answer the following questions:

1. Ilang oras ang biyahe ng bus galing sa Baguio?

2. Hihinto ba ang bus sa Zambales?

3. Alin ang ikatatlong probinsiya na hihintuan ng bus?

4. Ilan lahat-lahat ang probinsiya?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
ilan(g)	how many	5
alin	which one	rite in cab
ikatatlo(ng)	third	A
lahat-lahat	altogether	200

Give a Tagalog summary of the schedule in Dialogue 2 in the second column.

English

Tagalog

1. Departure from Baguio:

9.00 a.m

2. Arrival from Baguio:

7.45 p.m Ilocos, Pangasinan, Tarlac

Stopover:

Pampanga & Bulacan

	B	UŞ.			DAT		11	*****		
		201	10		AN			TIL	200	
	K	100		F	EB	2	A	M.	P.N	VI.
IIA	0	0	0	M	AR	3		HOI	JA	
C	1	1	4		PR,	1	3/	11	1	10
ASH	2	2		11	M		31			n
н	3	13	Į,				11		9	1
200	4	13		12		1	1	1	-	
т	5	160	12			$U_{i}$		10	-	15
Ė	쏲		27		27	!/		30		40
A	0		н			100	45	50	Ц.	55
М	8	9		104	34	30		199	7	
AC	÷	FX				F	FR	TTF	6 61	SF
V	3650.00		7,00070	940000	33	6	T	RI	-1	1
No	K	LOI	2:	EΑ	33	P	T	0.000	,	
Vo	K	LOI OS	(ET	EΑ	33			0.000	,	V:
Ve Fi	K	LOI OS	(ET	EΑ	33	P	ESC	0.000	,	V:
Fr P	K	LOI OS	(ET	EA TO		P	ESC	5 10 2	S 30	V.
F 0 1 2	K	LOI OS	(ET	EA TO		P	ESC	23	S 30	VS CO
Fr 0 1 2 3 3	K	LOI OS	(ET	EA TO		P	ESC	5 10 2	S 30	0 0
Fi 0 1 2 3 4 5	K	LOI OS	(ET	EA TO		P	ESC	23	S 30	0 0
F   0   1   2   3   4   5   6	K	LOI OS	(ET	EA TO		P	9 10 20 30	£ 2 3 4	50 60 70	20 00 20
Fi p 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	K	LOI OS	(ET	EA TO		P	ESC	2345	S 30	20 00 20
F 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	K	LOI OS	0 0 2 3 4 5 6	EA TO		P	9 10 20 30	2345	50 60 70	20 00 20
F(P) 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	K	LOI OS	0 0 2 3 4 5 6	EA TO		P	9 10 20 30 40	2345	50 60 70	20 00 20

# Exercise 9

Look at the bus ticket. Can you answer the following questions?

1. Magkano ang halaga ng tiket?

2. Ang numero ng tiket ay: anim, dalawa, dalawa, apat, apat, anim.

3. May petsa ba ang tiket ng bus?

4. Ilang kilometro ang layo ng biyahe?

5. Sinasabi ba sa tiket kung anong oras ang alis?

6. Sinasabi ba sa tiket kung anong oras ang dating?

# M Language skills

#### 2 Ma verbs

maligo to have a bath
matulog to sleep
maupo to sit down
makinig to listen
mahiga to lie down

There are five special verb stems that are neither um verbs nor mag verbs. These verbs are known as ma verbs due to them taking the prefix ma. The five ma verbs are intransitive and their tenses cannot be formed by using um or mag. As there are so few ma verbs, the best approach is simply to try to memorise them. Like um and mag verbs, ma verbs can be used with pseudo-verbs. Example: Gusto kong maligo I'd like to have a bath.

#### Forming tenses with ma

Ma + ligo = maligo = infinitive (used with

requests, suggestions

and commands)

Ma + li + ligo = future Na + li + ligo = present Na + ligo = past

Example sentences:

Verb + actor + time Naliligo ako araw-araw

I have a bath every day

Question marker + verb + direction Sino ang nakikinig sa kaniya?

Who is listening to him / her?

Verb + actor + particle + preposition Naupo ka ba sa silvang ito?

Did you sit on this chair?

Choose the correct form from the brackets:

1. Ayaw mo bang (maligo, naliligo, naligo) tayo sa dagat? (infinitive)

2. (Makikinig, nakikinig, nakinig) ako sa awitin niya. (present)

3. Maraming (naupo, nauupo, maupo) sa sahig kagabi sa awditoryum. (past)

4. Gusto po ba ninyong (mahiga, nahiga, mahihiga) sa kamang iyan? (infinitive)

5. Si Patricia yata ang (natutulog, natulog, matulog) sa bahay ni John kagabi. (past)

# Finding out what your journey will be like

# Dialogue 3

The Cook family are on the bus from Banaue to Manila. Bill Cook is talking to the conductor.

Bill Anong oras tayo darating sa Maynila? Konduktor Mga alas-siyete y medya po nang gabi.

Bill Saan tayo hihinto upang makapagbanat ng

katawan?

Sa Pampanga po at meron ding kubeta at paliguan Konduktor

doon.

Bill Magdadagdag ba kayo ng gasolina?

Konduktor Opo.

Bill May telepono ba doon para makatawag ako?

Konduktor Meron po. Bill Salamat.

Konduktor Wala pong anuman.

Tulasalitaan	Vocabulary
magdadagdag	will add
darating	will arrive
mga alas siyete y medya	around 7.30
nang gabi	at night
makatawag	be able to call
makapagbanat	to be able to stretch
kubeta	toilet
paliguan	shower/bathroom
gasolina	petrol
telepono	telephone
para	so that/ in order to

#### **Translation**

Bill What time are we arriving in Manila?

Conductor Around 7.30 in the evening.

Bill Is there any place where we can stop to stretch

ourselves (lit, our body)?

Conductor In Pampanga sir. There are also bathroom facilities

there.

Bill Are you going to top up your petrol?

Conductor Yes sir.

Bill Are there any telephones there for me to make a

call?

There are (telephones there) sir. Conductor

Bill

Thank you.

You're welcome sir. Conductor

# Exercise 11

Using the dialogue as your guide, can you do the following?

- 1. Ask the conductor what time the bus is stopping at Pampanga. (use Anong oras)
- 2. Ask him where else you will be stopping. (use pa)
- 3. Ask the conductor if there are bathroom facilities at the stop. (use Mayroon)
- 4. Tell the conductor you want to use the bathroom. (use Gusto kong)

# V

# Exercise 12 Understanding and speaking

Imagine that you are on a bus bound for Batangas, south of Manila. Why not have a go at speaking with the conductor. Listen carefully to the conductor's responses. Using the hints and the vocabulary box to help you, write out your part of the dialogue and then practice speaking it:

Ikaw (greet the conductor, saying good morning)

Konduktor Magandang umaga po. Didiretso po ba kayo sa

Batangas?

Ikaw (say yes, but that you are unsure about what time

the bus returns to Manila)

**Konduktor** Babalik po ba kayo pa-Maynila bukas? **Ikaw** (we will return tomorrow afternoon)

Konduktor Ganoon po ba? Mayroon pong bus na paalis sa

istasyon sa alas 3.00

**Ikaw** (three o'clock, that's fine)

Konduktor Ibig po ba ninyong bumili ng tiket na papunta

lamang doon o balikan?

Ikaw (just singles please. Three adults)

Konduktor Iyan po ay tres siyentos treynta pesos.

Ikaw (Say here you are / here's my payment)

Konduktor Maraming salamat po. Marunong kayong managalog!

Ikaw (say thank you very much, too)

Talasalitaan Vocabulary didiretso straight on babalik will return bukas tomorrow ganoon po ba? is that so ma'am/sir? paalis leaving istasyon station balikan return tres siyentos treynta 330 marunong know/knows how to managalog to speak Tagalog

# Manguage skills

3 Maka + um verb stem To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to
Makapag + mag verb stem To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to

In Dialogue 3, Bill Cook used the words makapagbanat and makatawag. These verb forms seem new and in jargon are known as circumstantial verbs. These verb forms above all give us a glimpse into Filipino culture. According to Filipino beliefs, some actions are brought about purely by circumstance, by accident or by occurrences beyond the actor/s' control. The active verbs um and mag verbs have special prefixes to express the circumstantial or involuntary nature of these actions. With um verbs, use the prefix maka. For example: makabili to be able to / to happen to / to come to / to manage to buy. With mag verbs, the prefix is makapag. For example: makapag + laro = makapaglaro to be able to / to happen to / to come to / to manage to play. Look at the guide on how to use the maka and makapag prefixes in the active um and mag verbs:

#### um verbs

Maka = (prefix) + alis (verb stem)

Maka + alis = makaalis = infinitive

to be able to leave to happen to leave to manage to leave to come to leave

Maka + ka + alis = makakaalis = will be able etc. to leave = future

Naka + ka + alis = nakakaalis = is able etc. to leave

= present

Naka + alis = nakaalis = was able etc. to leave

= past

Some examples:

makakain = to be able etc. to eat
makabili = to be able etc. to buy
makabasa = to be able etc. to read
makasulat = to be able etc. to write
makakanta = to be able etc. to sing
makaalis = to be able etc. to leave

#### mag verbs

makapag + (prefix) luto (verb stem)

makapag + luto = makapagluto = infinitive (used in requests, commands and suggestions)

to be able to cook to happen to cook to manage to cook to come to cook

maka + ka + pag + luto = makakapagluto = will be able etc. to cook = future naka + ka + pag + luto = nakakapagluto = is able etc. to cook = present nakapag + luto = nakapagluto = was able etc. to cook = pastHere are some examples:

Makapagsimba = to be able to go to church
Makapagsalita = to be able to talk/speak

Makapagbili = to be able to sell

Makapagluto = to be able to cook

Makapaglakad = to be able to walk

Makapaglinis = to be able to clean

Makapaglaba = to be able to wash clothes

# Some variations of maka and makapag sentences:

Verb + actor + object + preposition
Nakabili kami ng magandang damit sa palengke
We managed to buy a beautiful dress from the market.

Verb + particle + actor Nakapagluto ka na ba? Were you able to cook? / Did you manage to cook? Verb Prepostion + particle actor + object ang mga bata ng saranggola Nakagawa kahapon. na raw Apparently, the children [already] managed to make a kite vesterda:

### Exercise 13

Look at the following sentences. Can you supply the missing verb form?

1. Araw-araw, \_\_\_\_\_\_kami sa palaruan. (laro)
2. Hindi \_\_\_\_\_ ang mga turista kanina dahil sa bagyo. (alis)
3. \_\_\_\_\_\_ ba tayo ng mga pasalubong bukas? (bili)
4. Sa Sabado, maraming \_\_\_\_\_\_ ng masasarap na pagkain. (luto)

5. Sino sa mga babae ang \_\_\_\_\_\_ sa bus noong linggo? (tulog)

### One-minute phrases

Magmeryenda muna tayo (mahg-mer-yen-dah moo-nah tah-yaw) Literally, to have a snack first let us. (Please note that 'first' should not be given emphasis here.) An expression of casual but polite invitation meaning Why don't we have a snack? or Could I invite you to have a snack?

Mag-beer muna tayo/ mag-kape muna tayo (mahg-bber-moo-nah tay-yaw/mahg-kah-pe moo-nah fay-yaw) Could I invite you to a beer?, Shall we have coffee? etc. (These expressions have the same connotation as above except that meryenda is replaced with beer or coffee) 'Mag +\_\_ muna tayo' has a p tential to expand and can be used as a structure for other invitations.

Sa ibang araw na (sah ee-bahng ah-rao nah) Literally, in other days already. Meaning Some other day/Next time. Sa ibang araw na is a nice way of turning down an invitation.

Medyo tagilid (mehd-yaw tah-gee-leed) Literally, somewhat tilted. Similar in meaning to the English expression The dice are loaded. This phrase pertains to a situation the result of which is not positive. For example: Sa palagay mo mananalo si Ginoong Santos sa eleksiyon? Do you reckon Mr Santos will win the election? Hindi yata. Medyo tagilid ang resulta. I don't think so. The results are not in his favour / the dice are loaded against him.

May panahon ka ba? (migh pah-nah-hawn kah bah?) Literally, Do you have time? Meaning: Are you available?, Do you have a moment? etc. Students of the Tagalog language sometimes think that Filipinos are asking about the weather when they hear this question! Be careful not to mix up the two meanings of the word panahon.

# Cultural tip

It will not take you very long to recognise that the Philippines is a country where 'snacks' are an essential part of life. In the west, we speak of 'three square meals a day'. Filipinos tend to eat more frequently, but in smaller amounts. If you take a long trip by bus or jeep, it is not uncommon to stop off at a small town or even a sarisari store for a snack. Bus stations and Jeepney stands abound with hawkers selling everything from grilled fish to chewing gum. If you are travelling anywhere with Filipino friends, make sure you take a supply of snacks along with you. If you take nothing on a long journey, they may not complain but you can be sure that they will be hungry!

# SA TABING-DAGAT At the beach

#### In this unit you will learn how to

- hire a boat and prepare for a picnic on the beach
- use mang verbs and particles

# Hiring a boat

# Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook are at a beach resort. The surrounding islands look beautiful and so they decide to hire a boat.

Bill Maganda na ang panahon ngayon, magandang mamangka.

Louise Oo nga. Mamasyal kaya muna tayo tapos magtanong kung saan maaaring umarkila ng bangka. Roy, gusto mo bang sumama?

Roy Gusto ko. Tena. (Namasyal sa tabing-dagat ang maganak)

Bill Marami pang mangingisda sa laot. Nakikita ba ninyo?

Louise Oo. O, heto na pala ang pa-arkilahan ng bangka.

Bill Magandang araw. Gusto naming umarkila ng bangka para sa tatlo. Magkano ba?

May-ari Dalawandaang piso po sa bawa't oras.

Bill Sino naman ang tsuper namin?

May-ari Heto po siya. Les ang pangalan niya. (Ngumiti si Les)

Bill Magbabayad na ba kami ngayon?

May-ari Pagbalik na po ninyo.
Bill Maraming salamat.

May-ari Wala pong anuman.

Talasalitaan Vocabulary para sa tatlo for three (persons) magkano how much mamangka to go boating oo nga I agree mamasyal to take a stroll kaya muna tavo why don't we first tapos then magtanong enquire kung saan where magbabayad will pay umarkila ng bangka to hire a boat sumama to come/go with marami(ng) many bawa't oras each hour pa(ng) still tsuper (boat) driver mangingisda fishing laot sea ang pangalan the name ngumiti smiled paarkilahan a place to hire pagbalik when you return

#### Translation

Bill The weather is lovely now, it would be nice to go

boating.

Louise I agree. Why don't we take a stroll first then we can enquire where there are boats for hire. Roy, would you

like to join us?

Roy I'd love to. Let's go. (The family go for a stroll on the

beach)

Bill There are still many fishermen at sea. Can you see

(them)?

Louise Yes. Look, here's the place to hire boats from.

Bill Good day. We would like to hire a boat for three people.

How much will it cost us?

Owner Two hundred pesos an hour sir.

Bill (And) who is the captain of our boat?

Owner Here he is sir. His name is Les (Les smiles)

Bill Do we have to pay now? Owner When you get back sir.

Bill Thank you.

Owner You're welcome.

# Exercise 1

Answer the following questions with complete Tagalog sentences:

1. Bakit (why) sabi ni Bill 'magandang mamangka'?

2. Sila ba ay mamamangka muna (first) o mamamasyal muna?

3. Ano ang nakita nila sa dagat habang (while) namamasyal sila?

4. Sa palagay mo (in your opinion), mura ba ang pag-arkila ng bangka?

5. Nagbayad na ba kaagad (immediately) sila sa may-ari ng bangka?

# Language skills

# 1 Mang verbs

We have already met the um and mag active verb forms. The third form of active verbs are known as the mang verbs. In Dialogue 1, you will have noticed a few mang verbs: mamangka, to go boating, mamasyal, to go for a walk and mangisda, to go fishing. Mang verbs form transitive (e.g. mamili – to go shopping) and intransitive (e.g. mangawit, be tired) sentences. Broadly speaking, mang verbs could be described as um verbs where the action has been pluralised. This may sound confusing at first to the native English speaker but it is in fact quite simple.

For example, if we were to say **burnili ako ng sapatos**, then this **um** verb sentence would be translated as *I bought some shoes*. The act of 'buying' shoes is a one-off event. However, if we pluralise the action described by the **um** verb, then we end up with a very different sentence – **namili ako ng sapatos**, *I shopped for shoes*. The **mang** verb form suggests that the action of 'buying' was broader than a one-off event. As such, **namili ako ng sapatos** 

would be translated as I shopped for shoes. As the verb 'to shop' implies the possibility of a process or more than one action (i.e. moving from shop to shop in order to buy more than one pair of shoes), Tagalog would therefore consider it as a plural action. Don't worry if this seems to be confusing. Listen carefully to how native Tagalog speakers use mang form verbs. You will soon become accustomed to them

Apart from the pluralisation of action, a further characteristic of mang form verbs is that they can be used to express an action which is either 'deliberately harmful' (e.g. mangain, to devour) or an 'activity directed towards more than one object' (e.g., manguha, to gather). Another notable use of mang is to indicate an intensive or repeated activity directed toward a single object (e.g. a young man repeatedly dating a young woman = mangibig, to date).

#### Formation of mang verbs

1. Words that begin with p and b e.g. mang + pasyal (take a stroll), mang + buhay (life).

Formula: Change mang to mam. Drop first letter of word (pasyal becomes asyal) (buhay becomes uhay).

mam + asiyal = mamasyal to go for a stroll = infinitive mam + uhay = mamuhay to live/conduct one's life = infinitive

2. Words that begin with d = mang + dukot (put one's hand into a pocket).

Formula: Change mang to man. Add the word to man.

man + dukot = mandukot to go pickpocketing = infinitive man + daya = mandaya to go cheating others = infinitive

3. Words that begin with t and s = mang + takot (afraid), mang +saksak (stab).

Formula: Change mang to man. Drop first letter of word (takot becomes akot), (sakit becomes akit).

man + akot = manakot to frighten [several people] man + akit = manakit to cause pain

4. Words that begin with k = mang + kuha (get). Formula: Retain mang. Drop first letter of word (kuha becomes uha).

mang + uha = manguha 'to get' = infinitive

5. Words that begin with a, i (and other vowels) = mang + anak (child).

Formula: Merely add mang to word that begins with a vowel.

mang + anak = manganak to give birth to = infinitive

Mang + isda = mangisda to go fishing = infinitive

Mang + agaw = mang-agaw to go grabbing = infinitive

Mang + alok = mang-alok to offer = infinitive

Listen to the following verb forms on the tape. Can you see the difference between the underlying verb form and the mang verb form?

Underlying verb

bumili to buy kumain to eat dumukot to put hand inside pocket sumugat to wound tumaga to cut

magwalis to sweep kumuha to get pumitas to pick tumahi to sew

tumakot to frighten

dumikit to get stuck to

sumuyo to curry favour with umibig to love

pumasyal to pay a visit/drop by

Mang verb

mamili to go shopping mangain to devour mandukot to go pickpocketing

manugat to wound (deliberately) managa to slash (with intent to hurt or destroy) mangwalis to hit with a broom manguha to gather mamitas to go a-picking manahi to sew (a number of things) manakot to frighten (a number of people) manikit to get thoroughly stuck to

manuyo to curry favour with mangibig to pay court to /

to date

mamasyal to take a walk/stroll

#### Forming mang verb tenses

Mang (prefix) + isda (fish) = mang + isda 'to go fishing' infinitive (used for requests, commands and suggestions).

ma + ngi + ngisda = future na + ngi + ngisda = present na + ngis + da = past

Mang (prefix) + buhay (life) =

mam + uhay = to live infinitive ma + mu + mu + hay = future na + mu + mu+ hay = present na + mu + hay = past

#### Variations of a mang sentence

Verb + actor Mamimili si Anne Anne is going shopping

Verb + particle + actor

Namamalengke kaya + si Elizabeth?

I wonder if Elizabeth is shopping at the market?

Qualifier + verb + actor + time Hindi mangingisda ang mga lalaki sa Biyernes.

The men are not going fishing on Friday

Question word + actor + object + place Sino ang mamimitas ng dalanghita sa bukid?

Who will go picking oranges on the farm?

Qualifier + verb + place + time
Maraming namamasyal sa Luneta tuwing Linggo.

Many (people) go strolling in Luneta every Sunday

Actor + verb + object + beneficiary
Si Edith ang namili ng mga aklat para kay Manny.

It was Edith who shopped for books for Manny

Exercise 2

Can you translate the following?

- 1. I will go picking fruit tomorrow.
- 2. They will go fishing on Wednesday.
- 3. There are many people picking pockets in the market.
- 4. I will take a stroll tonight.
- 5. Let us go shopping!

# Exercise 3

Can you supply the answer? (Use the explanations in this chapter to help you.)

1. Bukas, \_\_\_\_\_sila ng rosas at ibang bulaklak sa hardin. (pitas/pick) (future)

2. Sino ang gustong \_\_\_\_\_? (isda / fish) (infinitive)

3. Walang \_\_\_\_\_ ngayon sa palengke kasi may baha. (bili/shop) (present)

4. Meron bang \_\_\_\_\_ sa bayan? (dukot / pickpockets) (present)

5. \_\_\_\_\_ siya ng blusa noong bakasyon (tahi / sew) (past)

# Mang verbs and recent action

Remember that when using the recent action with mang verbs, the same rules apply as outlined above except that mang changes to pang. For example:

ka + Future = Recent action ka + mamalengke (will go marketing) = kapapamalengke

ka + mamamaril (will go shooting) = kapapamaril

ka + mamimili (will go shopping) = kapapamili

(See also Unit 12, page 169.)

# Language skills

#### 2 Particles

You may remember coming across small words such as **po** (a sign of respect), **pa** (still), **naman** (on the other hand) and **na** (already) in previous units. In spite of their small size, these words are important elements in Tagalog sentence construction. Their function is to highlight or add impact to a statement, question or exclamation. In English these small words are known as adverbs, while in Tagalog they are known as particles. They occur in certain fixed places in Tagalog sentences.

As a rule, a particle is located 'sandwiched' in between the comment on the left and the subject on the right. For example, Superbisor si Edith. Edith is a supervisor. (without particle) becomes: Superbisor (comment) pala si Edith (subject). So, Edith is a supervisor, or Superbisor na si Edith, Edith is already a supervisor. However, it is possible to use more than one particle. How then do we decide the correct order of usage? Where two particles are used together, then the basic rule of thumb is this: the shorter particles (one syllable) go before the longer (two syllable) particles. For example: Superbisor na pala si Edith. So. Edith is already a supervisor!' In some instances, you may find anything up to four or five particles in a single sentence! Due to the many possible combinations, it would be unfair to try to suggest a single rule of usage. In such cases, the trick is to ask one of your Filipino friends how to 'string' the particles together, then memorise a few of the combinations that will be of use to you.

Let's take a closer look at how two of these particles **na** (already) and **pa** (still) are used:

#### Explanation of na and pa

Na denotes immediate performance of an action. It also means already or now.

#### Examples:

Bumili ka na (You) buy now
Arkitekto na si Manny Manny is already an architect

Bukas na ang binyag Ayoko na Malaki na ang

anak ni Tessie

The baptism will now be tomorrow I don't like it anymore Tessie's child is big now

Pa is used to mean continuation or resumption of an action.

## Examples:

Bumili ka pa (You) buy some more
Hilaw pa ang mga saging The bananas are still unripe
Tulog pa ba si Father Fred? Is Father Fred still asleep?
Bata pa ang bagong meyor The new mayor is still young
Nagluluto pa ako I'm still cooking

#### Example sentences:

- 1 Malalaki na ang mga anak ni Ginoong de Leon Mr de Leon's children are grown up now
- 2 Wala pa sila
  They (are not here) haven't arrived yet
- 3 Bukas na ako mamamalantsa I'm going to do my ironing tomorrow
- 4 Bukas na ang palabas
  The show will be (held) tomorrow
- 5 Kumain pa po kayo Please eat some more sir

# Exercise 4

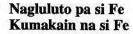
Look at the pictures. Each one is accompanied by two statements (one **na** and one **pa** statement). Can you decide which statement is appropriate to each picture?

Tulog pa si Erwin Gising na si Erwin





Gising na si Ardin Tulog pa si Ardin





# Exercise 5

Place the following jumbled-up sentences into their correct word order. Be careful to place the particle in the correct position.

- 1. pasko / malapit / ang / na
- 2. pa / nakakakain / hindi / ako
- 3. ba / sa / na / Sabado / ng / binyag / ang / anak mo
- 4. sa / sagot / na / tanong / alam / ba / ang / mo
- 5. sila / pa / kumakain / ba

# Going swimming

# Dialogue 2

The Cook family are back on the beach after their boating trip.

Bill Mabuti at naka-arkila tayo ng bangka. Louise Oo nga. Nakapamasiyal tuloy tayo.

Roy Nakakita ako ng malalaking isda sa tubig. Louise Nakita ba ninyo ang mga mangingisda?

Bill Oo. Nagtataka ako kung bakit nakakapangisda sila

kahit may mga namamangka.

Roy Nasiyahan ako at nakapamangka tayo.

Louise Ako rin.

Bill Gusto kong lumangoy na naman.

Louise Masarap ang tubig. Sige, lumangoy tayo.

Roy Tena.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tahimik	calm
naka-arkila	was able to hire
bangka	boat (canoe)
nakapamangka	was able to go boating
nakapamasyal	managed to take a stroll
tuloy	as a result
nakakita	happened to see
malalaking isda	big fish
nakita ba ninyo	did you see
mangingisda	fisherman
nakakapangisda	are able/manage to catch fish
masyado(ng)	so -
namamangka	boating
nasiyahan	was pleased
kung bakit	why
lumangoy	to swim
nagtataka	wondering
tena	let's go

### **Translation**

Bill It was good that we were able to hire a boat.

Roy I agree. And the sea was so calm.
I could see big fish in the water.
Did you see the fishermen?

Louise Yes. I was wondering how they are able to fish while

there are boats (around them).

**Roy** I am pleased that we were able to go boating.

Louise I am too.

Bill I'd like to go swimming again.

Louise The water is nice. Come on let's swim.

Roy Let's go.

### Exercise 6

Answer the following questions in complete Tagalog sentences:

1. Sino ang nasiyahan noong makaarkila sila ng bangka?

2. Ano ang nakita nila noong sila'y namamangka?

3. Ano ang nagagawa ng mga mangingisda kahit maraming bangka sa paligid?

4. Nasiyahan ba ang pamilya Cook sa kanilang pamamangka?

5. Pagkatapos, ano ang ginawa nilang tatlo?

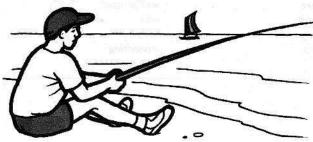
### Exercise 7

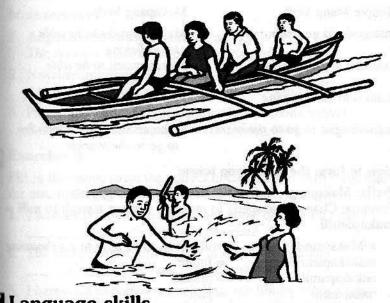
The following pictures are based on Dialogue 2. Can you find the correct verb to describe each action? Can you make up a simple sentence to describe each picture?

For example:

Verb: mangisda

Sentence: Nangingisda si Roy Cook





# M Language skills

# 3 Makapang To be able to, to happen to, to manage to, to come to

In Dialogue 2, you will no doubt have noticed some new verb types: nakapamasyal (managed to go strolling), nakapangisda (was able to go fishing) and nakapamangka (was able to go boating). These verb types represent the circumstantial form of the mang verbs. The actions represented by these verb forms are based on 1) circumstances; 2) ability; 3) involuntary actions. For example 1) makapang + palengke = makapamalengke, to be able to go shopping in the market. Makakapamalengke na si Jayne kasi dumating na si John. Jayne will be able to go to the market because John has arrived. 2) makapang + tahi = makapanahi to be able to sew. Nakakapanahi na si Tina kasi ibinili siya ng makina ni Philip, Tina is able to do some sewing now because Philip bought her a sewing machine. 3) Makapang + pasyal = makapamasyal, to be able to go for a walk/stroll. Nakapamasiyal si Bernard at si Gary pagkatapos ng hapunan. Bernard and Gary managed to go for a stroll after supper. Look at some comparisons:

More sentences

Simple Mang Verb Makapang Verb mangisda to go fishing Makapangisda to be able to go fishing mamaril to go shooting Makapamaril to be able to go shooting mamili to go shopping Makapamili to be able to go shopping mamalengke to go to the market Makapamalengke to manage

How to form the makapang tense:

Prefix: Makapang, infinitive: mamili, to go shopping Formula: Change makapang to makapa. Change mamili to mili = makapamili.

to go to the market

= Makapamili =infinitive, to be able to go shopping makakapamili = future

nakakapamili = present nakapamili = past

Prefix: makapang, infinitive: mangisda to go fishing

Formula: Retain makapang. Merely add makapang to isda = makapangisda

makapangisda = infinitive, to be able to go fishing makakapangisda = future, will be able to go fishing nakakapangisda = present, able to go fishing nakapangisda = past was able to go fishing

Sentence variation in makapang

Verb actor + time Nakakapamalengke si Rosie araw-araw

Rosie can go to the market every day.

Qualifier/verb + actor + place

Hindi nakakapamasyal ang mga bata sa tabing-dagat

The children are not able to take a walk on the seashore

+ particle/s Verb + time + actor

Nakakapamaril na ba ang mga lalaki kung Linggo? Are the men [already] able to go shooting on Sundays?

1. Ang lalaki ay nakapandukot sa palengke The man was able to go pickpocketing in the market

2. Nakakapamalengke ka ba kung Huwebes? Are you able to go to the market on Thursdays?

3. Parang makakapangisda ang mga mangingisda ngayon It looks like the fishermen can go fishing today

Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with the correct circumstantial verb form maka for um, makapag for mag and makapang for mang).

1. I wonder if they were able to buy some coke? (bili / past) kaya sila ng coke?

2. The children managed to play at night. (laro / past) ang mga bata sa gabi.

3. I happened to borrow a book from the library. (hiram / past) ako ng libro sa silid aklatan.

4. He can leave early. (alis / present) siya nang maaga.

5. I want to be able to return tomorrow. (balik / infinitive) Ibig kong\_ bukas.

Exercise 9

The following sentences are wrong because of the verb tense. Can vou correct the mistake?

1. Nakapangisda sila bukas.

2. Makabili ako ng pasalubong mamaya.

3. Hindi kami nakakakain sa party kahapon.

4. Sino ang makakabisita sa iyo noong isang linggo?

5. Makakain na po ba kayo?

Exercise 10 Speaking, listening and understanding

Imagine that you have just returned from a boat trip with your Filipino friends. You go to pay the owner who engages you in friendly conversation. Translate your part of the dialogue into

Tagalog before practising the conversation with the help of the tape. Use the vocabulary box to help you.

Owner Maligayang pagdating! Kumusta ang biyahe mo?

You Thank you. It was a very relaxing afternoon. We were

able to go fishing too.

Owner Nangisda? Aba, mabuti naman! May nahuli ba naman

kayo?

You Yes. We were able to catch a big tuna fish and two

lapulapu [red snapper].

Owner O, eh di may maluluto kang panghapunan mo.

You Yes! I hope we will be able to return here next year and

catch more fish.

Owner Bukas ang bahay namin sa iyo!

You Here's my payment for the boat hire.

Owner Maraming salamat sa iyo. You Thank you very much too.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
pagdating	arrival
nangisda	went fishing
nahuli	caught
makahuli	be able to catch
maluluto	able to be cooked
panghapunan	for supper
makabalik	be able to return
bukas	open
pag-arkila	hire

### One-minute phrases

Sa madaling salita (sah mahdah-leeng sah-lee-tah) Literally, in quick words. Similar in meaning to the English expression 'to cut a long story short'. For example: Marami pa akong ikukuwento sa iyo, pero sa madaling salita, wala na akong panahon, I have a lot more to tell you but to cut a long story short, I have ran out of time.

Pagka-alis na pagka-alis (pahg-kah-ah-lees nah pahg-kah-ah-lees) Literally, upon leaving, upon leaving. Meaning immediately

after leaving. For example Pagka-alis na pagka-alis ng eroplano, umuwi na kami. Once the aeroplane left, we went home immediately.

Mangyari pa (mahng-yah-ree pah) Literally, happening still. This Tagalog phrase is equivalent in meaning to the English expression 'of course'. For example: Umalis si Boy nang walang paalam sa magulang niya, mangyari pa, nagalit ang mga ito sa kaniya. Boy left without saying goodbye to his parents, of course they were upset with him.

Masarap maligo (mah-sah-rahp mah-lee-gaw) Literally, delicious to take a bath/to swim Masarap (delicious) is a word we would not ordinarily associate in English with anything other than food. The word has a much broader usage in Tagalog, hence it can be applied to an assortment of pleasurable activities. in this case, the meaning is 'It's nice to take a bath'. For example: Laging masarap maligo sa dagat, It's always nice to take a bath (swim) in the sea.

Lipas na sa moda (lee-pahs nah sa maw-dah) Literally, past the fashion. Similar to the English phrase 'out of fashion'. For example: Hindi ba lipas na sa moda ang malaking kuwelyo at bell bottoms?, Aren't wide collars and bell bottoms out of fashion now?

# Cultural tip

A beach picnic is a popular form of relaxation for Filipinos. Why not suggest a trip to the beach with your Filipino friends? Filipino culture places very high value on 'harmony' in relationships. What better way to deepen your friendships and promote harmony than opting for a relaxing outing in a restful environment? There are many bamboo beach houses available for short-term rental and boats for short excursions. Even if you feel confident in your Tagalog, it's a good idea to get your Filipino friends to agree on a price with the boat or beach house owner. Chances are that you would end up paying significantly more. Even if you are paying, let your friends do the talking. They will feel much happier and you will probably save money!

# In this unit you will learn

- more about the passive
- in' verbs
- more on particles

# Becoming a godparent

# Dialogue 1

Beth and Edwin have asked Roy to be a godfather at the baptism of their baby.

Beth Maaari bang gawin ka naming ninong sa binyag ng aming anak?

Talaga? Aba, oo - isang malaking karangalan ito. Roy Edwin Dalawa kayong ninong at dalawa rin ang ninang.

Kailan ba gaganapin ang binyag? Roy

Sa Sabado, ika-4 ng Disyembre sa simbahan sa baryo. Beth

Roy Anu-ano ang dapat kong gawin?

Madali lang. Tatayo lang kayo sa tabi ng magulang Edwin habang nagseseremonya ang pari.

Ganoon lang pala. Anong oras sa Sabado? Roy

Beth Alas 9:30 nang umaga. Pagkatapos, may salu-salo sa

aming bahav.

O, sige hihintayin ka namin kasama ni Jobert. Tumawag Edwin

ka lang kung meron kang itatanong.

AT CHURCH

219

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
maaari	can
gawin	be made
ninong	godfather
ang pari	the priest
binyag	baptism baptism
aming anak	our child
pala	tal variet <mark>so</mark> nev njeli er jednotbel sjirab
ninang	godmother
kailan	when
gaganapin	will be held
pagkatapos	afterwards
anu-ano	what are
dapat	must/should
ko(ng)	all in the second of the second of
hihintayin	will wait for
madali lang	just easy
tatayo	will stand
sa tabi	next/beside
kasama	together with/companion
habang	while
nagseseremonya	officiating
ganoon	like that
sa baryo	at the barrio
salu-salo	party
tumawag	call (on the telephone)
kung	if
tatanong	something to ask

### Translation

Beth Would you like to be a godfather to our child? (at the

baptism of our child)

Really? Of course - this is a big honour. Roy

Edwin There will be two godfathers and also two godmothers.

Roy When will the baptism be held?

Beth On Saturday December 4 at the barrio chapel.

Roy What will I have to do?

(It's) Easy. You will just stand next to the parents while **Edwin** 

the priest performs the ceremony.

Roy So that's it. What time on Saturday?

**Beth** 9.30 in the morning. Afterwards, a reception follows at our house.

**Edwin** All right. We'll be waiting for you with Jobert. Please call if you have anything to ask.

# Exercise 1 Mga Tanong: (Questions)

Using Dialogue 1 to help you, answer the following questions in Tagalog:

- 1. Ano ang paanyaya (invitation) ni Beth at Edwin kay Roy?
- 2. Ilan ang magiging (become) ninong at ninang?
- 3. Saan gaganapin (will be held) ang binyag at salu-salo?
- 4. Tinanggap (accept) ba ni Roy ang paanyaya?
- 5. Sino ang kasama (companion) ni Roy papunta (going to) sa simbahan?

# Language skills

O'

# 1. 'IN' Passive verbs

In Units 12, 13 and 14 we were introduced to the Tagalog active verb types (um, mag, mang). Dialogue 1 introduces us to a number of passive verbs (gawin, to make, gaganapin, will be held, hihintayin, will wait for). Whereas the active verbs we have looked at lay emphasis on the actor ('doer' of the action), passive verb sentences lay emphasis on the object. With just a glance at the comparison table, you will quickly see that both active and passive verbs use different actors (see table). These different actors are necessary in as far as they inform the listener as to where the emphasis of the sentence lies: on the object or on the actor. In Tagalog, active verbs take the ang form actors while passive verbs use **ng** form actors. The basic rule of thumb is this; in passive verb sentences, the actor you use is from the ng group (ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, nila, etc.), while in active verb sentences the actor is from the ang group (si, sina, ako, ka, ikaw, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila, etc.) Stick to this rule and you won't get lost.

The first of the Tagalog passive verbs is the in verb. This verb type is recognised by the suffix 'in' added after the verb root. For example: kain + in = kainin (be eaten). Like the active verbs, you can expand passive sentences by adding an adverb, a particle, a preposition, or a time element and so on. It is also important to note that some in verbs are directional verbs. For example: Sasabihin ko sa kanila ang kailangan mo, I'll tell them what you need. This sentence has a verb, an actor, a receiver of the action (the sa) and a goal (the object).

Passive and active verb actors: a comparison table

Um/mag/mang	Object	In/i/an	Object
A	Any of B	В	Any of A
Si		Ni	
Sina	And Shirt Man	Nina	Se Tillia habe
ako		ko	S MAN WAT COLUMN
ka/ikaw		mo	Mary Property (1922)
siya		niya	- 18 Kiril
kami		namin	6 andrew
tayo		natin	SI SNELLESS
ito		nito	de programa in
iyan		niyan	
iyon		noon	dit manife
ang		ng	

### Don't forget: ko + ka = kita

Look at the following sentences to compare active and passive verbs:

From active ve	rb	to passive verb		
um verb	to	in verb	en love S	
Verb Actor Object Time element	bumili ako ng magasin kahapon	Verb Actor Object Time element	binili ko ang magasin kahapon	
I bought <b>a</b> magazine yesterday		I bought <b>the</b> ma yesterday	agazine	

mag verb	to	in verb	
Verb Actor Object Time element	magluto tayo ng pansit para sa party ni Caroline	Verb Actor Object Time element	lutuin natin ang pansit para sa party ni Caroline
Let us cook so Caroline's par	<b>me</b> noodles for rty	Let us cook the noodles for Caroline's party	
mang verb	to	in verb	
Verb Actor Object Time element	naninigarilyo si Ambo ng Marlboro lagi	Verb Actor Object Time element	sinisigarilyo ni Ambo ang Marlboro lagi
Ambo always smokes Marlboro		Ambo always . Marlboro	smokes <b>the</b>

In these sentences you can see that the in verbs are followed by a definite article.

# Exercise 2

Here are some um, mag and mang sentences. Rewrite them as in sentences, using the guide to help you:

Example: Bumasa tayo ng nobela. (Um) Basahin natin ang nobela.

- 1. Bukas ba kayo bibili ng bagong stereo?
- 2. Gumagawa siya ng bulaklak na papel.
- 3. Tumatahi ka ba nito?
- 4. Tumutugtog siya ng kundiman sa piyano.
- 5. Naglilinis pa ako ng kuwarto ko.
- 6. Pumili ka ng sariwang gulay.

# Attending a baptism

# Dialogue 2

After the baptism, Roy wants to take a few pictures of the group outside the church.

Roy	Kukunan ko ng retrato ang aking inaanak sa binyag.		
Beth	Puwede ba kunan mo rin ng retrato ang mga		
	ninong at ninang?		
Roy	Aba oo. Kasama rin ang mga magulang ng sanggol.		
Edwin	Eto pala si Father Rex. Isama natin siya.		
Beth	Father Rex, sumama po kayo sa amin.		
<b>Father Rex</b>	O sige. Salamat. Maganda ang binyagang ito.		
Edwin	Salamat po, Father.		
<b>Father Rex</b>	Walang anuman.		

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
kukunan	will take	
retrato	picture	
aking inaanak	my godchild	
sumama	to join	
kunan	to take	
aba oo	of course	
sanggol	baby	
eto pala	so here is	
isama	to include	
o sige	all right	
binyagang ito	this baptism	

### Translation

Roy	I want to take some pictures of my godchild.	
Beth	Can you take a picture of the godparents too?	
Roy	Of course. Including the parents of the baby.	
Edwin	Here comes Father Rex. Let's ask him to join us.	
Beth	Father Rex, Please join us.	
<b>Father Rex</b>	All right. Thank you. This is a good baptism.	
Edwin	Thank you Father.	
<b>Father Rex</b>	You're welcome.	

# Exercise 3

Using complete Tagalog sentences, what do you say when:

- 1. You want to take a picture of your friends?
- 2. You are asking your friend to take your picture?
- 3. You want to make a nice comment about someone's dress?
- 4. You want to ask someone to join you?

# Language skills

### 2. Changing the tense of in verbs:

The in infinitive is used for requests, commands and suggestions.

kuha	=	stem get/take		
kuha + in	=	kuhain (becomes kunin)	=	infinitive
ku + kunin	=	kukunin	=	future
k + in +ukuha	=	kinukuha	=	present
k+ in + uha	=	kinuha	0 <u>=</u>	past
alis = stem ren	ıove			
alis + in	=	alisin	=	infinitive
a+ alis + in	=	aalisin	=	future
in + a + alis	=	inaalis	=	present
in+ alis	=	inalis	=	past

# Exercise 4

Supply the appropriate tense forms of the following in verbs. Use the examples to guide you:

In	finitive			Future	Present	Past
1.	ibig =	stem love	=			
2.	kain =	stem eat	-			
3.	linis =	stem clean				
4.	sulat =	stem write				
5.	tapos =	stem finish	=			

#### More on in verbs:

As object, focus in verbs typically denote actions 'radically' affecting the goal, such as those causing change in its structure. For example:

Infinitive	Stem	
gawin	gawa	to make, do
lutuin	luto	to cook
tapusin	tapos	to finish
tadtarin	tadtad	to chop

Sometimes used with a directional, focus in verbs may express motion in relation to a goal (in which case there is usually some element of contact with the goal). For example:

Infinitive	Stem	
panhikin	panhik	to go up into
pasukin	pasok	to enter
pukulin	pukol	to throw something at
salpukin	salpok	to strike against
sampalin	sampal	to slap one's face

### Most cooking terms fall under in:

Stem	
saing	to cook (as in rice)
laga	to boil
prito	to fry (in deep oil)
sangag	to fry (with very little oil, as in rice)
putol	to cut
hiwa	to slice
tadtad	to chop
	saing laga prito sangag putol hiwa

### Most cleaning terms fall under in:

linisin	linis	to clean
kuskusin	kuskos	to scrub
ayusin	ayos	to arrange/tidy up

Most stative actions (actions describing a state of being) are in:

gulatin	gulat	to surprise
takutin	takot	to scare
hiyain	hiya	to embarrass
gutumin	gutom	to make hungry
biguin	bigo	to disappoint

Illnesses can be verbalised under in: Here, there is no actor, just a goal:

lagnatin	lagnat	to have a fever
sipunin	sipon	to suffer from cold
malaryahin	malarya	to suffer from malaria

To be infested by insects fall under in when verbalised. Here again, there is no actor, just a goal.

anayin	anay	to be infested with termites
langgamin	langgam	to be infested with ants
lamukin	lamok	to be swarmed with mosquitoes
surutin	surot	to be infested with bedbugs

### For example:

- 1. Nilalanggam ang cake. The cake is swarming with ants.
- 2. Sinisipon ka ba?

  Are you suffering from cold?
- 3. Minalarya ang mga sundalo. The soldiers suffered from malaria.
- 4. Nilalagnat si Mario. Mario has a fever.

### Sentence variations

Verb +	actor +	object:
Hiwain	ninvo	ang cihi

Hiwain ninyo ang sibuyas at kamatis.

You slice the onions and tomatoes

Qualifier + Huwag Don't you ea	actor + ninyong t their food!	verb + kainin	object: ang pagkain nila
Qualifier + Binabago Indeed, the s	particle + talaga un changes th	actor + ng araw e colour of ou	object: ang kulay ng ating balat r skin
Question ma Sino Who surprise	a	ctor + ng gumulat	object (directional): sa kaniya?

Qualifier + actor + object + verb: Hindi ko siya pipilitin I won't force her

Note: There are irregular in verbs that change when forming the infinitive. For example: bili, buy becomes bilhin, sunod, follow becomes sundin, kuha, get/take becomes kunin, dala, carry becomes dalhin, sabi, say becomes sabihin.

# Exercise 5

Choose the correct verb from the brackets and translate the sentence into English:

- 1. (Hinuhuli/hulihin/hinuli) ng pulis ang mga sidewalk vendors araw-araw. (present)
- 2. Alam mo ba kung ilang mangga ang (kinain/kakainin/kainin) ni Bosyo kanina? (past)
- 3. Kailan mo (tinahi/ tatahiin/ tinatahi) ang aking bestida? (future)
- 4. Huwag mong (sasabihin/ sinabi/ sinasabi) kay Rex ang sagot mo. (future)
- 5. Kahapon, (nilinis/ lilinisin/ linisin) na niya ang bagong kotse. (past)

# V

### Exercise 6

Look at the three pictures. From the accompanying word box, see if you can match up two appropriate in verbs to each picture:



linisin	to clean
inumin	to drink
bilhin	to buy
kainin	to eat
sirain	to destroy
sipunin	to have a cold
gulatin	to surprise
lutuin	to cook
lagnatin	to have a fever
kunin	to get
biruin	to tease/joke
kilalanin	to know
sabihin	to tell

### Dialogue 3

After the baptism the priest is seen speaking to Roy.

Pari Kumusta ka Roy.

Roy Mabuti po naman. At kayo po?

Pari Mabuti rin naman salamat. Isa ka pala sa mga ninong ng bagong binyag.

Roy Opo. Tinanong nila ako kung puwede ako at tinanggap ko naman ang paanyaya.

Pari Mabuti. Ang mga magulang mo, darating ba?

Roy Hindi po.

Pari Pupunta ka ba sa salu-salo?

Roy Opo.

Pari O, sige mag-enjoy ka.

Roy Salamat po.

#### Talasalitaan Vocabulary you're one of the isa ka sa mga pupunta will go salu-salo party bago(ng) binyag newly baptised was asked tinanong I'm available puwede ako accepted tinanggap invitation paanyaya magulang mo your parents darating will arrive to enjoy mag-enjoy

### Translation

Priest How are you, Roy. Roy I'm fine sir. And you?

Priest I'm fine too, thank you. So you're one of the godfathers

of the newly baptised?

Roy Yes I am. They asked if I was available and I accepted the

invitation.

Priest Good. Your parents, are they coming?

Roy No sir.

Priest Are you going to (attend) the party?

Rov Yes sir.

Priest All right. You enjoy yourself.

Thank you sir. Roy

# Exercise 7

Here are the answers, but can you supply the questions?

1. Oo. Ninong din ako. **Question:** 

2. Dalawa kaming ninong. Ouestion:

3. Wala rito ang mga magulang ko. Question:

4. Pupunta siguro ako sa salu-salo. Question:

# Exercise 8

Look at the following pictures and listen to the tape. You will notice that the pictures are out of sequence with the story. After listening to the story, number the pictures in their correct order:



After replaying the tape and listening to the story several times, why not have fun by retelling the story in Tagalog to some of your Filipino friends.

# M Language skills

AT CHURCH

### 3. More on particles

In Unit 14 we looked at the particles (adverbs) pa and na. A fuller list of common Tagalog particles and their uses follows. The ability to learn and use particles in your spoken Tagalog will not only add 'polish' to your sentences but will no doubt impress your Filipino friends too! Look at the table and study the examples that follow:

Particle	When and how it is used	
naman	on the other hand (also used as a form of reply meaning too/as well/ in fact)	
ро	used out of respect in answering or addressing an elder or superior or person of rank	
ba	interrogative particle answerable by yes or no	
pala	so! So A Callandary Comment	
nga	indeed, truly	
raw/daw	according to them/ they say/ apparently/ she/he said etc.(raw is used with a word after a final vowel)	
kaya	used idiomatically to express doubt  I wonder/ do you think	
yata	I think, maybe, it seems	
rin/din	also,too, as well (rin is used with a word after a final vowel)	
na naman	again	

### Example sentences

- 1. Naupo si Phil at tumayo naman si Harry.

  Phil sat down and on the other hand, Harry stood up.
- 2. Umuulan na naman! It's raining again.
- 3. Kumusta po kayo?

  How are you sir/madam? (very formal)
- 4. Nagbabakasyon rin kami taun-taon. We also go on holiday every year.
- 5. Mandurukot kaya ang taong ito? I wonder if this man is a pickpocket.
- 6. Ito pala ang istasyon ng pulisya. So this is the police station.
- 7. Ginagamit mo ba ito? Are you using this?
- 8. Hindi raw niya kailangan ang pasaporte natin. Apparently he/she doesn't need our passport.

# Exercise 9

Here are some sentences. Fill in the blank space with an appropriate particle, then translate the sentence into English. Use the clues to help you:

Example: Kumakain ka ba ng balut? Translation: Do you eat balut?

	Hansia	non. Do you cai baini.
1.	Hindi	sila Pilipino. (so!)
	Translation:	
2.	Magaganda	ang mga bulaklak sa hardin ninyo
	(indeed)	
	Translation:	
3.	Sino	_ ang mga bagong bisita nila? (I wonder)
	Translation:	
4.	Tinatawag ka _	ng mga kaibigan mo. (I think)
	Translation:	
5.	Narito	ang mga kailangan ko? (?)
	Translation:	

#### Use of ba

The particle **ba** cannot be translated directly into English. Its purpose is to indicate that a sentence is in fact a question. Use of **ba** is optional, except in question formulas such as **hindi ba**, etc. In the more sophisticated Manila Tagalog, it is often missed out altogether.

As a particle, ba is normally found sandwiched between the comment and the subject of a sentence. For example, Turista (comment) ba si Ginoong Abbott (subject)?, Is Mr Abbott a tourist? When more than one particle is used in a sentence, as a permanent rule, ba comes after na (na ba), pa (pa ba), rin (rin ba), raw (raw ba) and na naman (na naman ba). When a long string of particles is used, ba can be found at the end of a sentence, thus Namili ka rin daw ba?, Did they say you also went shopping?

Occasionally the subject is omitted altogether, such as when the speaker raises his / her voice tone clearly indicating that they want to ask a question. For example, Malinis na ba ang mesa?, Is the table clean already becomes Malinis na ba? (ang mesa), Is it [the table] clean already?

An amusing word of warning to the Tagalog learner: Be careful when using the particle **ba** in connection with the second person singular **ka** (informal). In this case, **ka** precedes **ba**, i.e. **ka ba** (instead of **ba ka** which translates into English as cow! For example, Guro ka ba?, Are you a teacher?, not Guro ba ka?, which would translate as teacher cow!

### One-minute phrases

Kunan mo ako (koo-nahn maw ah-kaw) Literally, take/get (something) from me. Meaning take my picture/photograph!! For example: Gene, kunan mo naman ako sa camera ko,Gene, would you be kind enough to take my picture with my camera?

Ikaw ang masusunod (ee-kao ahng mah-saw-saw-nawd) Literally, you're the one to be followed. Meaning as you like it! You're the boss! For example: Kung gusto mong umalis tayo nang maaga, ikaw ang masusunod. If you want us to leave early, then you're the boss.

Dahan-dahan ang pagsasalita (dah-hahn dah-hahn ahng pahg-sah-sah-lee-tah) Literally, slow-slow the talking. Meaning could you speak a little more slowly. For example: Dahan-dahan lang ang pagsasalita para maintindihan ko ang sinasabi mo, Please speak slowly so that I'd be able to understand you.

Anuman ang mangyari (ah-noo-mahn ahng mahng-yah-ree) Literally, whatever the happening. Similar in meaning to the English expression 'come what may'. For example: Darating daw sila anuman ang mangyari, They said they would arrive come what may.

Tumingin-tingin (too-mee-ngeen tee-ngeen) Literally, to have a look/see. Meaning to have a look around/ to see. For example: Kapag namalengke ka, tumingin-tingin ka nga kung may sariwang lapulapu, If you go to the market, would you have a look if there are fresh lapulapu.

### Cultural Tip

Relationship bonds are high on the agenda in Filipino culture. Filipinos are deeply loyal to their families and are prepared to sacrifice their own confort and personal happiness in order to improve the lot of their loved ones. Where no blood ties exist, Filipino culture finds other ways to forge connections. One such way is the kumpare or kumare system. These words can be translated literally as 'co-father' or 'co-mother'. Here, a respected person is invited by a family to become a godparent at the baptism of one of their children. If you are invited to be a godparent remember that it is considered to be an honour. You are then no longer just a visitor or an outsider, but a 'co-mother' or a 'co-father' to the child. You are now 'connected' to the family at a deeper level. Of course, it is good to be aware that such connection may carry certain financial expectations or even obligations. Saying 'yes' to such an invitation may have consequences, but saying 'no' is potentially just as complicated.

# MAAARI BANG GAWIN MO ITO? Could I ask a favour of you?

### In this unit you will learn how to

- make requests and suggestions
- give a command
- give instructions

# Making requests and suggestions

# Dialogue 1

At the Abiva residence, Louise Cook is asking Lily to do something for her.

Louise Maaari bang ipakihulog mo ang mga sulat ko?

Lily Aba opo. Ibigay po ninyo sa akin at ihuhulog ko kaagad. Louise Heto. Labindalawa ang mga iyan. Wala akong selyo.

Ibili mo na tuloy ako ng selyo at ipakilagay mo ang mga

selyo sa sulat.

Lily Sige po. Ako po ang bahala. Pupunta ako sa post office.

Louise Maraming salamat ha? Heto ang pera. Lily Wala pong anuman, Ginang Cook.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ipakihulog mo	could you post
tuloy	as well
aba opo	of course (formal)
ibigay	to give
sa akin	to me
ihuhulog	will post
kaagad	immediately
ibili	to buy for
pakilagay	please put
ang bahala	will look after

### Translation

Louise Could you kindly post my letters?

Lily Sure ma'am. If you give them to me I'll post them

immediately.

Louise Here. There are twelve there. I don't have stamps. If you could also buy some stamps for me and put them on the

letters.

Lily All right ma'am. I'll look after them. I'm going to go to

the post office.

Louise Thank you very much indeed. Here is the money.

Lily You're welcome, Mrs Cook.

# Exercise 1

Listen to the dialogue again and then answer the following questions.

 Ano ang sinabi ni Louise Cook kay Lily? Answer:

2. Ilan ang sulat na ihuhulog ni Lily?
Answer:

3. Bakit bibili si Lily ng selyo?

Answer:

4. Saan bibili ng selyo si Lily? Answer:

# Language skills

### 1. Passive 'i' verbs

A second passive verb form is known as the i type verb. Dialogue 1 gives us a few examples: ibigay, to give, ihuhulog, will post, ibili, to buy for. As with all passive verb forms, it always takes a ng form actor (either ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila, ninyo, niyan, noon, or ng), while the object or goal is always an ang form word (either si, sina, ako, ka/ikaw, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila, ito, iyan, iyon, ang mga ito, ang mga iyan, ang mga iyon, or ang). For example: Ibinalik ni Elvira (actor) ang libro (object), Elvira returned the book. The infinitive of the i verb is easily recognised by the prefix i before the root word. For example: i + hulog = ihulog, to post or to drop, i + tapon = itapon, to throw and so on.

The i verb is unique in that it is object focused, meaning that we lay more emphasis on the object rather than on the doer of the action. For example: Isinara ko ang bintana, The window (object) was closed by me. or I closed the window. If this same sentence uses an active verb, the focus would then be on the doer of the action: Nagsara ako ng bintana, I closed a window. Some i verbs are also used as beneficiary words, meaning that an action is performed for the benefit of another person. For example: ibili, to buy for (someone), ikuha, to get for (someone) igawa, to make for (someone), isama, to take someone along (for someone). In all of these cases, the recipient (or beneficiary) of these verbs is represented with an ang form word.

For example: Ibinili ko si Eileen ng sapatos, I bought (a pair of) shoes for Eileen. Igagawa ko si Neneng ng manyika, I'll make a doll for Neneng. The i verb is also directional, that is, it uses sa as a goal. Example: Ibigay natin ito sa kanila, Let us give this to them. Ipinasok ni Larry ang mga silya sa loob, Larry took the chairs in/inside/indoors.

### Compare the um and i Beneficiary

Bumili ako ng sorbetes para kay Tess	I bought some ice cream for Tess
Ibinili ko ng sorbetes si Tess	I bought Tess some ice cream
Gumawa sila ng saranggola para sa akin	They made a kite for me
Iginawa nila ako ng saranggola	They made me a kite
Sumama ako sa kanila sa sine	I went to the cinema with them
Isinama nila ako sa sine	They took me to the cinema

### Compare the mag and i forms

•	ompare the may and i forms	
	Mag-aakyat siya ng panggatong	He/she will bring/take up some firewood
	Iaakyat niya ang panggatong	He/she will bring/take up the firewood
	Nagprito ba kayo ng itlog?	Did you fry some eggs?
	Iprinito ba ninyo ang itlog?	Did you fry the eggs?

Naglalabas na sila ng mga silya	They are taking out some chairs now
Inilalabas na nila ang mga	They are taking out the chairs
silya	now

### Some example sentences:

- 1. Ibinigay ni Bernie ang bolpen kay Elizabeth Bernie gave the pen to Elizabeth
- 2. Isasama mo ba si Stephen sa sine?

  Are you going to take Stephen to the cinema?
- 3. Isasampay ko muna ang mga damit *I'll hang the clothes first*
- 4. Ano ang inilagay mo sa sopas? What did you put in the soup?
- 5. Isasara ko na po ba ang mga bintana? Shall I close the windows now?
- 6. Itinahi ako ni Letty ng magandang blusa Letty has sewn a lovely blouse for me
- 7. Igagawa mo ba siya ng laruan?

  Are you going to make a toy for him/her?

### Changing the tense of the i verb

Prefix	I		
Stem	tapon throw		
Infinitive	I + tapon	=	itapon to be thrown
Future	I + ta + tapon	=	
Present	$I + t + in + a_tapon$	=	
Past	I + t + in + a + pon	1911=	itinapon was thrown
Infinitive Future Present	I + tapon I + ta + tapon I + t + in + a_ tapon	=	itapon to be thrown itatapon will be thrown itinatapon is being thrown itinapon was thrown



### Some familiar i verbs - Listen and repeat

Listen to the correct pronunciation on the tape. Listen carefully to the slight variations in pronunciation of each tense and then try to repeat without the help of the tape.

Infinitiv	e Translation	Future	Present	Past
ibigay	to give	ibibigay	ibinibigay	ibinigay
ilagay	to put/place	ilalagay	inilalagay	inilagay
itapon	to throw	itatapon	itinatapon	itinapon
itago	to keep in a safe place	itatago	itinatago	itinago
itabi	to keep aside	itatabi	itinatabi	itinabi
ibagsak	to drop with force	ibabagsak	ibinabagsak	ibinagsak
itaas	to take up/raise	itataas	itinataas	itinaas
isabit	to hang on a hook	isasabit	isinasabit	isinabit
isampay	to hang on a line	isasampay	isinasampay	isinampay
itulak	to push	itutulak	itinutulak	itinulak
isukat	to try something on	isusukat	isinusukat	isinukat
isara	to close	isasara	isinasara	isinara
lpasok	to take inside	ipapasok	ipinapasok	ipinasok
ilabas	to take outside	ilalabas	inilalabas	inilabas
ipasa	to pass	ipapasa	ipinapasa	ipinasa
ibili	to buy for	ibibili	ibinibili	ibinili
ikain	to eat for	ikakain	ikinakain	ikinain
ikuha	to get for	ikukuha	ikinukuha	ikinuha
igawa	to make for	igagawa	iginagawa	iginawa
isama	to take someone with	isasama	isinasama	isinama
itahi	to sew for	itatahi	itinatahi	itinahi
isakay	to take aboard	isasakay	isinasakay	isinakay
			ar and the safety of the safety and	- Statistical and State -

Some i verbs are used in connection with activities of a social nature (beneficiary):

Stem	Meaning	
ikumusta	kumusta	to say hello for
idalo	dalo	to attend for
ihalik	halik	to kiss for
iyakap	yakap	to embrace for
ibalita	balita	to send news for
Ikumusta mo	kami sa kanila	Say hello to them from us
Ihalik mo ako sa nanay		Kiss Mother for me

Some i verbs denote actions affecting the position of the ang, without causing a change in its structure. They often correspond to mag verbs.

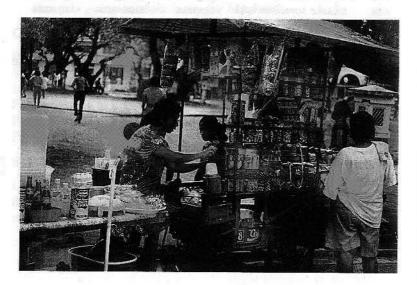
Meaning Stem iakyat akyat to bring/take up ialok alok to offer itapon tapon to throw iuwi uwi to take home

Inialok ni Peter ang kotse niya Peter offered his car to me sa akin

Bakit mo iuuwi iyan? Why are you taking that home?

In their passive form, mag verbs denoting ways of preparing food are represented as i verbs:

iluto luto to cook iihaw ihaw to broil/grill iprito prito to fry ipaksiw paksiw to make paksiw



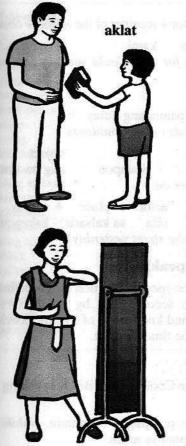
Ipinirito mo ba ang isda? Iniluto ko na ang bangus

Did you fry the fish? I have cooked the milkfish already

### Exercise 2

Look at the cartoons. Can you say what actions are being performed? Write your answer in the space provided. A noun has been provided to help you.

Example: Itinatapon ang basura (ang basura)







Sentence variations using i form verbs:

Verb + actor + beneficiar + object + adverb Ikukuha ko siya ng tubig

I will get him/her (a glass of) water.

Igagawa namin sila ng laruan We will make a toy for them.

Isinasama nila ako sa parke lagi.
They always take me along with them to the park

Ibili mo kami ng sandwich Buy some sandwiches for us

Pseudo-Verb + particle +verb + actor + receiver of the action + object

Maaari bang ibili mo kami ng sandwich?

Could you buy some sandwiches for us?/ Could you buy us some sandwiches?

verb actor object
Ilalabas ni Tessie ang mga panindang gulay
Tessie will take the vegetable goods outside/outdoors

adverb particle actor verb object

Mamaya na namin itatapon ang basura

We will throw out the rubbish later on

Question word + object + actor + place + time Ano ang itinulak nila sa kalsada kahapon? What was it that they pushed on the street yesterday?

# Exercise 3 Listening and Speaking

Listen to the tape. You will hear the speaker mention different times of the day. Each time of day is accompanied by a verb in the infinitive form. Using your skill and knowledge of i verbs, provide the correct tense to accompany the time element.

# Dialogue 2

Bill

Jobert has been a great help to the Cook family. Bill is speaking to him.

Jobert, masyado yatang pinapagod ka namin. Nahihiya kami sa ginagawa mo para sa amin.

Jobert Hindi naman. Konting bagay lang ito. Noong nasa London ako tinulungan ninyo ako. Malaki ang utang na loob ko sa inyo.

Jobert Ikaw naman. Bale wala iyon. Kalimutan mo na iyon.

Aba, isinama ninyo ako sa mga lugar na hindi ko maaabot kung hindi sa inyo. Ibinili ninyo ako ng mga kailangan ko. Inihatid ninyo ako sa paliparan.

Bill Maraming salamat Jobert sa pag-alaala mo pero hindi ka dapat mag-isip ng ganiyan.

Jobert Walang anuman. Maraming salamat na muli.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
isinama	accompanied
pinapagod ka	tiring you
nahihiya	embarrassed
ginagawa	doing
para sa amin	for us
hindi naman	not so
bagay	thing
noong	when
tinulungan	helped
muli	again
utang na loob	debt of gratitude
bale wala	means nothing
kalimutan	forget
maaabot	won't be able to reach
kung hindi	had not been
ibinili	bought for
kailangan	needs
inihatid	took to
pag-alaala	concern
mag-isip	to worry
ganiyan	like that

### **Translation**

Bill Jobert, I think we are tiring you a lot. We are feeling (a little) embarrassed by what you're doing for us.

Jobert Not at all. This is only a small thing. When I was in London you helped me. I owe you a lot.

Bill Oh, you. That's nothing. Please forget about that.

Jobert Well, you took me to places that I would not have reached had it not been for you. You bought me things I needed. You took me to the airport.

Bill Thank you Jobert for your concern but you shouldn't think like that.

Jobert Don't mention it. Thank you very much again.

# Exercise 4

Can you answer the following questions?

1. Bakit nahihiya si Bill kay Jobert?

2. Bakit nag-aalaala si Jobert?

3. Magbigay ng dalawang bagay na ginawa nina Bill para kay Jobert sa London.

4. Kung ikaw, mag-aalaala ka rin ba katulad ni Jobert?

# Language skills

2. Mag = verb Walang + verb

May + active verb or mayroong + Active verb = someone, somebody

May + passive verb or mayroong + Passive verb = something

Walang + active verb = no one, nobody

Walang + passive verb = nothing

 $\mathbf{Marami} + \text{active or Passive} = a \ lot \ of f \ lots \ of$ 

We have already met the words may, mayroon has/have, mayroon there is/there are and marami many.

These words are used not only to express possession but may also be used as may phrases expressing 1) presence; 2) something

indefinite. Simply speaking, a may phrase expresses presence when there is no subject in the sentence and may (or mayroon) is followed by a noun. This is in fact less complicated than it sounds. Look at this example: May pagkain sa mesa. There is food on the table (food is present on the table).

In indefinite phrases, may (or mayroon) is followed by a verb. For example: May bibili ba ng Coke bukas?, Will someone buy Coke tomorrow?, May bumibili ng coke. Someone is buying Coke. May naglilinis dito araw-araw, Someone cleans here everyday. Mayroong\* kumatok kagabi, Someone knocked on the door last night. Maraming\* namimili sa palengke kung Sabado, Many (people) go to the market on Saturdays. (\* Note: as a general rule, mayroon and marami become mayroong and maraming when followed by a noun). No doubt you will have noticed that each of these sentences has no subject. When the verb in an indefinite may phrase is an active verb (um, mag, mang), then the sentence has no subject. However, if the verb in an indefinite may phrase is a passive verb (in. i. an) then there is a subject. For example: May kinuha ako sa kaniya, I took something from him/her. Mayroong itinapon si Stephen sa sahig, Stephen threw something on the floor. Maraming inalis sa trabaho noong bago mag-pasko, Many (employees) were made redundant before Christmas.

You will remember that the opposite to may is wala. Wala + ng not only expresses absence or non-possession of something, but like may, mayroon and marami, it can be used to express the indefinite. As with may, mayroon and marami, if the verb used with wala is an active verb (um, mag, mang), then there is no subject. For example: Walang kumakain ng luto ko, No one is eating what I've cooked, Walang naglalaro ng tennis ngayon. Nobody is playing tennis today. Wala bang mamimili bukas? Isn't anyone going shopping tomorrow? Again, if the verb used with wala is a passive verb, (in, i or an) then there is a subject. For example: Walang binili si Roy sa duty free, Roy didn't buy anything from the duty free. Wala ka bang ibibigay kay Sophie? Aren't you giving anything to Sophie?, Walang tinawagan si Amy kagabi, Amy didn't call anyone (on the telephone) last night.

Reference table			edigmic and supplied	
Active verb (um,	, mag, mang)	No Subject +	Time etc.	
may mayroong maraming walang	kumakain kumakain kumakain kumakain	Fluides (12) The State Service (12) The state area	kagabi kagabi kagabi kagabi	
Passive verb (in,	i, an)	Subject +	Time etc.	
may mayroong maraming walang	kinain kinain kinain kinain	si Patricia si Patricia si Patricia si Patricia	kanina kanina kanina kanina	

### Sample sentences:

May sumigaw sa klase kanina Someone shouted in class a while ago

Maraming nagbabasketball sa kalye hapon-hapon Many play basketball in the street every afternoon

May tumawag raw sa akin kagabi Apparently someone called me (on the telephone) last night

Walang kumain ng luto ni Bennie Nobody ate Bennie's cooking

May nagdarasal sa simbahan sa umaga Someone prays in church in the morning

May nangyari sa kaniya Something happened to her/him

May kumakatok yata

I think someone is knocking on the door

May sinabi ka ba sa kaniya? Did you tell him/her anything?

Walang ginagawa ang mga empleyado dito The employees here are not doing anything

Maraming binili si Ginang de los Reyes sa tindahan Mrs. de los Reyes bought a lot of things from the store

# Exercise 5:

The following sentences are jumbled up. Can you put them back into their correct order?

- 1. dito marami(ng) araw-araw bumibili ng libro.
- 2. sa pinto may kumakatok yata.
- 3. ako kahapon may kinuha sa kaniya.
- 4. walang noong Linggo sa akin sa ospital sumama.
- 5. sa kabila ng tennis na naman may naglalaro.

# M Language Skills

### 3. Requests, commands and suggestions

To make a simple request in Tagalog, just use maaari bang/ puwede bang followed by the infinitive form of an active or a passive verb! What could be simpler? Look at these examples:

Maaari bang maupo kayo? Puwede po bang huwag tayong manigarilyo. Would you mind sitting down? Would you mind not smoking?

# Exercise 6

Try making your own command, request or suggestion:

Example: **pumirma**. (Request): Maaari bang pumirma kayo dito? Sir/madam, could you please sign here?

- 1. Command: tumayo (to stand up)
  Sentence:
- 2. Request: maupo (to sit down)
  Sentence:
- 3. Suggestion: matulog (to sleep)
  Sentence:
- Request: manigarilyo (to smoke) Sentence:
- 5. Suggestion: mamasiyal (to go for a walk) Sentence:

TAGALOG

# Exercise 7

You are on the telephone to your local hardware store. You have decided to help your Filipino friend make some improvements to her house but first of all, you will need a few supplies. Complete the following dialogue, using the vocabulary box to help you:

Ikaw Say good morning

Store Magandang umaga. Ano po ang maipaglilingkod ko sa invo?

Ikaw Ask if they have any cement

Store Marami po kami niyan.

Ikaw Say you would like to reserve ten bags

Store Aba opo. Mayroon pa po ba kayong nais (bilhin)?

Ikaw Ask if they have any marine plywood Store Wala po. Ordinaryong plywood lamang. Ikaw Ask if they have any aluminium roofing sheets

Store Opo. Mayroon po. Kararating lang po ng bagong delivery ngayong umaga.

Ikaw Good. Ask him to reserve twelve sheets for you

Store O, eh iyon pong pampako sa pambubong na aluminum?

Ikaw Yes. Two kilos please

Store Mayroon pa po ba kayong kailangan?

Ikaw No, that's all thank you. I will drop by at midday

Store Ayos lang po, sir. Paalam na po.

Ikaw Goodbye

Ask one of your Filipino friends to help you practise this dialogue aloud.

### One-minute phrases

Ikumusta mo ako (ee-koo-moos-tah maw ah-kaw) Literally, Say hello you me. Similar to its English equivalent ('say hello for me'), this Tagalog expression is used when sending greetings to a third person.

Ipagpaumanhin po ninyo (ee-pahg-pah-oo-mahn-heen paw neen-yaw) Literally, Please bear with/excuse (formal) you. Meaning 'to make something appear less serious/ to excuse'. This is a very polite and commonly used expression

acknowledging any form of inconvenience caused to another person. For example: Ipagpaumahin po ninyo ang sagabal na ito sa inyong kalsada, We apologise for this obstruction on your street.

Unti-untiin (oon-tee oon-tee-een) Meaning 'to do something little by little/slowly'. A useful phrase used in the same way as its English equivalent. For example, Sabi ni Nanay, unti-untiin daw natin ang pagkain ng sorbetes, Mother said that we have to eat the ice-cream little by little.

Labag sa batas (lah-bahg sah bah-tahs) Meaning 'against the law'. For example: Labag sa batas ang magpasok sa ating bansa ng anumang drugs. It is against the law to bring into our country any drugs.

Pagdating na pagdating (pag-dah-ting nah pag-dah-ting) Literally, upon arrival, upon arrival. Meaning immediately upon arrival. For example: Sabihin mo kay Pedro na pumunta sa opisina ko pagdating na pagdating niya, Tell Pedro to come straight to my office the moment he arrives.

# **Cultural** tip

As a people who consider smooth and harmonious relationships to be one of life's essentials, Filipinos have developed ways and means of engendering favour and good standing with one another. One such way is the utang na loob or debt of gratitude system. Very simply, it is understood that any favours received or favours granted do, indeed, have to be returned. To help another person out places that person in your debt, and one day they must find a way of repaying you. Local politicians have been known to use this cultural value to their benefit, particularly around election time. Relationship ties are commonly strengthened by utang na loob which underlines the Filipino cultural value of inter-dependence. Don't be surprised to be on the receiving end of a favour. It is culturally understood that favours will strengthen ties with you which may come on useful one day!

# 17 ISANG KASALAN A wedding

### In this unit you will learn how to

- understand Filipino customs and traditions: a wedding
- use reflexive verbs

# Understanding Filipino customs and traditions: a wedding

### Dialogue 1

It is Pinky Abiva's wedding day. The bride and groom are talking to their guests.

Louise Kay ganda ng damit-pangkasal mo Pinky.
Pinky Salamat Louise. Mahusay ang modista namin.

Roy Maligayang bati, Pinky. Narito na pala ang mga ninong, ninang sa kasal, mga abay sa kasal, mga cord sponsors at mga tagapagdala ng singsing.

Pinky Oo, tinulungan nila akong maghanda para sa araw ng kasal ko.

Louise Maraming matatapos na gawain kung marami ang gagawa, hindi ba?

Roy Naayos na rin ba ang problema tungkol sa retratista?
Pinky Aba, oo, Inayos na ni Johert

Pinky Aba, oo. Inayos na ni Jobert. Louise Ang tungkol sa pulot-gata?

Pinky Hindi pa namin naiisip, kasi marami kaming inasikaso. Sandali lang ha? Maraming dumarating na mga bisita.

Louise Okay lang.

Talasalitaan Vocabulary kay ganda how beautiful damit-pangkasal wedding dress modista dressmaker here now narito na witnesses mga ninong at ninang nn kasal wedding mga abay sa kasal wedding assistants tagapagdala ng singsing ring bearer tinulungan ako helped me maghanda to prepare for my wedding day para sa araw ng kasal ko matatapos na gawain jobs will be finished dumarating arriving will do ang gagawa managed to arrange naayos problema problem tungkol sa about retratista photographer fixed/arranged inavos pulot-gata honevmoon hindi pa not yet naiisip able to think about inasikaso dealt with sandali lang wait a moment

### Translation

Louise Your wedding dress is so beautiful, Pinky.

Pinky Thank you Louise. Our dressmaker is very good.

Roy Congratulations, Pinky. So the witnesses are here now,

the cord sponsors and the ring bearers.

Pinky Yes, they (all) helped me prepare for my wedding day.

Louise Things can be done if there are many (hands) to help,

isn't that so?

Roy Was the problem concerning the photographer solved?

Pinky Oh, yes, thanks to Jobert. (Jobert helped fix it)

Louise How about your honeymoon?

Pinky We haven't (yet) thought about it, we have so many (other) things to attend to.

Louise That can be sorted out later. (lit:, that's all right)

# Exercise 1

True or false? If the answer is false, try to give the correct one:

Example: Kasama sa mga abay sa kasal ang pari.

Answer: Mali. Hindi isa sa mga abay sa kasal ang pari. Ang pari ang nagbibigay ng seremonya.

1. Maaaring walang ninong at ninang ang ikinakasal. Sagot:

2. Kailangang maghanda maraming buwan bago ikasal. Sagot:

Laging puti ang damit-pangkasal ng babaeng ikinakasal. Sagot:

4. Sa Pilipinas, laging may handaan kung may kasalan. Sagot:

# Exercise 2

Improving your vocabulary. Look at the puzzle. Find as many wedding-related words as you can:

N	Ι	N	0	N	G	S	0	L	S
P	A	1	L	I	R	0	K	0	I
A	M	N	0	R	I	F	I	В	M
G	P	A	R	I	L	M	В	I	В
K	A	N	A	N	G	D	U	S	A
A	R	G	A	L	U	M	L	I	н
I	P	U	L	0	T	G	A	Т	A
N	0	S	0	Т	1	M	K	A	N
S	I	N	G	S	Ι	N	G	R	0
R	E	T	R	A	T	I	S	T	A
Т	R	A	С	0	R	D	M	Н	M

# M Language skills

### 1. Passive an verbs

Dialogue 1 introduced us to a third type of passive verb known as the an verb. Like the in and the i passive verb forms, the 'doer' of the action (actor) in the an verb form is identified by a ng word (ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila etc.). The an verb is easily recognised by the addition of an (as a suffix) to the root verb. For example: hugas + an = hugasan, to be washed. In a passive an verb sentence, the ang form (si, sina, ako, ka, siya etc.) indicates the goal of the sentence while another ng word indicates the object. For example: Bigyan natin ng pagkain ang bata, Let's give the child some food.

The an form verb differs from other verb forms in that: 1) the goal (or ang) is the receiver of the action. For example, if we were to say: Binigyan ko si Alan ng mainit na kape, I gave Alan (a cup of) hot coffee, then Alan is clearly identified as the receiver of the act binigyan because he has received the coffee. Any action therefore that the an verb suggests is received by the goal. In English, we would express this by using the words from, at, with, to etc. For example: Tinapunan ko si Lewis ng bola, I threw a ball at Lewis.

Winawalisan ni Patricia ang balkonahe, Patricia is sweeping the porch. For the 'info-holics' among us, it is interesting to note that most an verbs are derived from transitive um or mag verbs. For example, the um verb Bumili siya ng saging sa matandang babae, He/she bought some bananas from the old woman becomes binilhan niya ng saging ang matandang babae, from the old woman he bought bananas, when expressed in the an form. Here, the emphasis is on the goal or matandang babae. In the same way, Nagbigay kami ng damit sa pulubi, We gave some clothes to the beggar, becomes Binigyan namin ng damit ang pulubi, the beggar was given some clothes by us, with emphasis on pulubi as the goal. When in and i verb roots are used as an verbs, the meaning of the verb changes. Look at the examples.

(into pieces)

Sinulatan

ba

Did Louisa write to his/her friend?

### How to form an verb tenses

Verb root: punas + suffix: an = punasan = to wipe (to be wiped) infinitive (can be used in requests, command & suggestions)

pu + punas + an = pupunasan =  $will\ be\ wiped$  = future p + in + u + punas + an = pinupunasan =  $being\ wiped$  = present p + in + u + nas + an = pinunasan =  $was\ wiped$  = past

In some instances, an verbs change to han when forming the infinitive. This depends on whether the accent on the second syllable is hard or soft:

### For example:

Verb root: sama + suffix: han = samahan = to be accompanied infinitive sa + sama + han = sasamahan = will be accompanied = future <math>s + in + a + sama + han = sinasamahan = being accompanied = present

s + in + a + ma + han = sinamahan = was accompanied = past Listen carefully to native Tagalog speakers and you will soon pick up the difference between hard and soft accented words. Here are a few examples:

tira +	an	= tirahan/tirhan
pila +	an	= pilahan
para +	an	= parahan
sara +	an	= sarahan/sarhan
asa +	an	= asahan
bili +	an	= bilihan
basa +	an	= basahan
ganda +	an	= gandahan
dami +	an	= damihan
dumi +	an	= dumihan
pinta +	an	= pintahan
punta +	an	= puntahan

A brief comparison between in, i and an verbs.

in kain (eat) Kakainin nila iyan Kakainan nila iyan They will eat that They will eat from that alis (remove) Inalis ni Joe ang plato sa mesa Inalisan ni Joe ng plato ang mesa Joe removed the plate from A plate was removed by Joe from the table the table punit (tear off) Pinupunitan ni Sarah ang papel Pinupunit ni Sarah ang papel Sarah is tearing the paper Sarah is tearing off from the

You will remember that the receiver of the action in i verbs is always indicated by sa. In the an verb form, the receiver of the action is indicated by an ang form word. Compare the following examples:

paper

Cattipico.	
	An
Ibibigay ni Alan kay Lina ang pera Alan will give Lina the money	Bibigyan ni Alan si Lina ng pera Alan will give Lina some money
Itatapon ko ang sirang silya sa basurahan I will throw the broken chair into the bin	Tatapunan ko ng sirang silya ang basurahan I will throw a broken chair in the bin
Isinara ni Mario ang pinto Mario shut the door	Sinarhan ni Mario ang pintuan. Mario closed the door
An verb sentence variations:	
Verb + actor + Dinumihan ni Charlotte Charlotte soiled her clothes	object/goal ang kaniyang damit.
Verb + particle + actor +	Receiver of the action/goal

ni Louisa

ang kaibigan niya?

Qualifier + actor + particle + verb + object + goal Hindi mo raw binigyan + ng pera si Viv. Apparently, you didn't give Viv (any) money.

Question word + receiver of the action + actor + time Sino ang nginitian ni Tim kanina? Who did Tim smile at a while ago?

Pseudo-verb + verb + actor + Object + Receiver/goal Gustong bigyan ni Lucy ng bibingka ang bata.

Lucy would like to give the child some rice cakes.

# Exercise 3

Using the examples to guide you, change the following sentences into an form sentences:

- Kakainin ko ang pansit sa plato. Answer:
- 2. Tumutulong ako sa kaniya. Answer:
- Maglalagay kami ng rosas na halaman dito. Answer:
- 4. Gusto kong ibigay kay Larry ito.

  Answer:
- 5. Ilalagay ba natin ito doon? Answer:
- 6. Huwag mong aalisin ang libro sa mesa. Answer:

# Exercise 4

Fill in the blank spaces with the correct verb form:

1.	Bukas(t	tulong) namin sila. (future)
2.	Kailan ninyo	(laki) ang inyong kusina? (past)
3.	(sukli) k	ta na ba ng tsuper? (past)
4.		g (sama) niya bukas. (future)
5.		
6.		ng bata ang lolo niya. (present)
7.	(sarap) r	ng tagapagluto ang handa sa parti. (future)
8.	Ayokong	_ (palit) ang aking maleta. (infinitive)



### Exercise 5:

When arranged in the correct sequence, the following sentences will tell a story. Arrange the sentences into the correct order and then translate the story into English. Use the vocabulary box to help you.

### Sa kasalan

Napagod sa pagsayaw ng Tinikling ang pamilya Cook subali't nasiyahan sila.

Habang kumakain ang ilan sa mga bisita, tumugtog ang maliit na banda.

Isa sa mga tugtugin ay Tinikling.

Tumulong sa paghahain at pagsisilbi ang mga kaibigan ni Pinky.

May tugtugin at ang mga panauhin ay sumayaw.

Tuwang-tuwa ang lahat dahil sa marunong mag-Tinikling si Bill at si Louise.

Maraming kumuha ng retrato sa bagong kasal paglabas nila ng simbahan.

Dumating ang bagong kasal kasunod ang mga panauhin.

Isa-isang nagpaalam ang mga panauhin.

Nagbigay din ng speech ang 'best man'.

Inihanda ng mga tagapagluto ang pagkain at inumin dahil sa darating na ang mga panauhin.

Maraming sasakyan ang umalis sa simbahan papunta sa bahay ng bagong kasal.

Ang mga nagluluto sa kusina ay abala.

Paglabas nila sa simbahan, sinabugan ng bigas ang bagong kasal.

Inanyayahan ng mga panauhin na sumayaw ng Tinikling si Bill,

Louise at Roy. Maraming pagkain at marami ring inumin.

Sa dulang, nagbigay ng maikling speech ang mga bagong kasal.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
napagod	got tired
pagsayaw	dancing
subali't	with a first but the alleged by the state of the
bagong-kasal	newly wed
paglabas	upon leaving
tumugtog	played (a musical instrument)
banda	band
inihanda	prepared
tugtugin	music
tumulong	helped
paghahain	offering
pagsisilbi	serving
panauhin	guests
sumayaw	danced
tuwang-tuwa	happy
lahat	everybody
sinabugan	sprinkled with/showered with
marunong	know
kumuha	took
nagpaalam	said goodbye
nagbigay	gave
tagapagluto	cook
sasakyan	cars etc.
nagluluto	cooking
inanyayahan	invited
dulang	table

# Exercise 6 Listening

Here are some commonly used an verbs. Listen to the correct pronunciation on the tape. After listening to the pronunciation a few times, try to repeat what you heard without the help of the tape:

Infinitive	Meaning	Verb root
awitan	to sing	awit
ayusan	to arrange	ayos
asahan	to rely upon	asa
alalayan	to assist/guide	alalay
basahan	to read to	basa

bigyan	to give to	bigay
bihisan	to clothe	bihis
damitan	to clothe	damit
damihan	to make many	dami
dumihan	to soil / dirty	dumi
gandahan	to make beautiful	ganda
halikan	to kiss	halik
habaan	to lengthen	haba
sundan	to follow	sunod
tularan	to copy/imitate	tulad
puntahan	to go to	punta
pintahan	to paint	pinta

# M Language skills

### 2. Expressing the circumstantial in passive verbs

Ma, Mai, Ma-an To be able to, to happen to, to come to, to manage to

The three passive verbs in, i and an form the circumstantial as follows:

- by adding the prefix ma to in verb roots. For example: ma + kain = makain (to be able to be eaten)
- by adding the prefix mai to i verb roots. For example: mai + tapon = maitapon (to be able to be thrown)
- by adding the prefix ma and suffix an to an verb roots. For example: ma + hugas + an = mahugasan (to be able to be washed).

As in active verbs, some actions are brought about purely by circumstance, by accident or by occurrences beyond the actor's control.

Here is a guide on how to use the ma, mai and ma-an prefixes with the passive in, I and an verbs.

### In verbs

Ma = (prefix) + kain (verb root)
ma + kain = makain = infinitive
to be able to be eaten
to happen to be eaten
to manage to be eaten
to come to be eaten

ma + ka + kain = makakain = will be able etc. to be eaten = future na + ka + kain = nakakain = able etc.to be eaten = present na + kain = nakain = was able etc. to be eaten = past

### I verbs

Mai = (prefix) + bigay (verb root)Mai + bigay = maibigay = infinitive to be able to be given to happen to be given to manage to be given to come to be given

mai + bi + bigay = maibibigay = will be able etc. to be given = future nai + bi + bigay = naibibigay = able etc. to be given = present nai + bigay = naibigay = was able etc. to be given = past

### An verbs

Ma (prefix) + hugas (verb root) + an (suffix)

Ma + hugas + an =mahugasan = infinitive to be able to be washed to happen to be washed to manage to be washed to come to be washed

ma + hu + hugas + an = mahuhugasan = will be able etc. to be washed = future

na + hu + hugas + an = nahuhugasan = able etc. to be washed = present

na + hugas + an= nahugasan = was able etc.to be washed = past

# Some examples of the circumstantial in passive verbs

### In verbs

mabili to be able etc. to be bought makain to be able etc. to be eaten madala to be able etc. to be brought malinis to be able etc. to be cleaned maluto to be able etc. to be cooked masulat to be able etc. to be written

### I verbs

A WEDDING

to be able etc. to be thrown maitapon maibigay to be able etc. to be given to be able etc. to be taken with maisama to be able etc. to be taught maituro to be able etc. to be bought for maigawa to be able etc. to be given a lift maisakay

### An verbs

to be able etc. to be washed mahugasan to be able etc. to be cleaned malinisan mahalikan to be able etc. to be kissed to be able etc. to be written to masulatan to be able etc. to be accompanied masamahan to be able etc. to be paid mabayaran

# Exercise 7

Read each of the following sentences carefully. Using the alternative tense given in the brackets, rewrite each sentence. Don't forget to adjust the time-element, if any is given.

Example: Gusto kong malinisan ang mesa. (present)

Nalilinisan ko ang mesa. Answer:

- 1. Nasulatan mo na ba si Sophie? (present) Answer:
- 2. Naitatapon ni Harry ang basura lagi. (future)
- 3. May nabuksan siyang kabinet kanina. (present) Answer:
- 4. Hindi nasamahan ni Caroline si Phil sa bayan kagabi. (future) Answer:
- 5. Sino ang naisasakay mo sa kotse araw-araw? (past) Answer:

# Talking about customs

# Dialogue 3

At the party following the marriage ceremony, Bill Cook witnesses some traditional Filipino wedding customs for the first time. He strikes up a conversation with Peter, Pinky's uncle.

Peter Kumusta kayo, si Peter ako. Tiyo ni Pinky. Sana nagustuhan ninyo ang aming handaan.

Bill Aba oo. Masaya ang kasalang ito. Ngayon lang ako nakakita ng pera na ikinakabit sa damit ng bagong kasal.

Peter Isa iyan sa mga tradisyong Pilipino.

Bill Napansin ko rin na nagmamano ang bagong kasal sa mga lolo at lola at ang lola ay bumubulong sa babae at ang lolo naman ay bumubulong sa lalaki.

Peter Oo nga. Hindi lang iyon. Mamaya, may ibibigay ang matatanda sa kanila. Nakabalot ito sa panyo. Kadalasan ito'y pera upang gawing puhunan ng bagong mag-asawa.

Bill Magandang kaugalian iyan. Bakit naman tumatakbo ang bagong kasal na parang nag-uunahan sila?

Peter Ah kasi, may kasabihan ang mga Pilipino na kung sino sa dalawang bagong kasal ang unang umakyat sa bahay, siya ang masusunod.

Bill Ganoon ba?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tiyo	uncle
sana	I hope
nagustuhan	liked
handaan	reception
ibibigay	will be given
ngayon lang	just now
nakakita	was able to see
ikinasal	married
kinakabitan	being attached
tradisyon(g)	tradition

noticed
kissing the hand
newly wed
will be followed
grandpa and grandma
whispering
man and woman
indeed
the old ones
wrapped
often times
capital
running
beating each other
saying
climb up

### Translation

Peter How are you, I'm Peter, Pinky's uncle. I hope you like our party.

Bill Oh, yes. This wedding celebration is good. This was my first time to see (paper) money being pinned to the clothes of the newly weds.

Peter That's a Filipino tradition.

Bill I also noticed that the newly weds kissed the hands of the (their) grandparents and that the grandmother whispered (something) to the girl (while) the grandfather whispered (something) to the boy.

Pete Indeed. That's not all. Later on, the old people will give (something) to them wrapped in a handkerchief. Usually this is money to be used by the newly weds as capital.

Bill That's an interesting custom. Why are the newly weds chasing one another?

Peter Oh, that's because we have a Filipino saying that whoever (between them) manages to climb up (the stairs) to the house first will be the 'boss'.

Bill Really?

# Exercise 8

Answer in complete Tagalog sentences:

- 1. Ano ang unang tradisyon na binanggit (mentioned) ng tiyo ni Pinky?
- 2. Sino ang humahalik sa bagong kasal na babae?
- 3. Bakit binibigyan ng nakabalot na pera ang bagong kasal?
- 4. Ano ang dahilan (reason) kung bakit tumatakbo ang mag-asawa?

# Language skills

# 3. Sarili ko/aking sarili etc. Reflexive Mismo Intensive

'I myself will do the painting.' 'Letty will feed herself.' 'Liam overworks himself.' All of these examples indicate an action done to or on behalf of the self. The subject is the beneficiary of the action. These are reflexive expressions. The Tagalog word used to express the reflexive is sarili (self, own). The Tagalog reflexive is used either in connection with a ng form personal pronoun (ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, ninyo and nila) or a sa form personal pronoun (akin, iyo, kaniya, amin, atin, inyo or kanila) plus a ng ending. The sa form personal pronouns then become: aking, iyong, kaniyang, aming, ating, inyong and kanilang. Both ng and sa form personal pronouns can be used interchangeably. There is no hard and fast rule suggesting when sa or ng can or cannot be used. Look at the following examples given in both forms: sarili ko/ aking sarili = myself, sarili mo / iyong sarili, yourself etc. Here are some example sentences: Sinaktan niya ang sarili niya, He hurt himself. Huwag mong saktan ang sarili mo, Don't hurt yourself. However, the word sarili may also be used on its own. For example: Sarili ko ito. This is my own. Sarili ni Steve ang bahay na ito, This house is Steve's own. When a reflexive phrase is used as a describing word, a ng word may be used. For example: Tumitingin si Mamerta ng sarili niyang retrato, Mamerta is looking at a picture of herself.

Another way of expressing the reflexive in Tagalog is through the word mismo. Mismo is a stronger word than sarili and so serves to

further stress the personal pronoun that accompanies it. Mismo takes a ng ending when following a pronoun. For example: Mismong ako, I myself, mismong sila, they themselves, mismong kami, we ourselves and so on. When a personal pronoun precedes mismo, then ng is not used. For example: Ako mismo, I myself. Siya mismo, he himself. Sila mismo, they themselves and so on. Mismo can also be used with a sa form word. For example: Mismong sa Cubao siya nakatira, It's in Cubao itself that he/she lives.

### Some example sentences:

- 1. Kinuha niya mismo ang pera sa bangko
  He took the money himself from the bank
- 2. Ako mismo ang sumalubong kay Paul sa paliparan I myself went to meet Paul at the airport (or I went to meet Paul at the airport myself)
- 3. Sinaktan niya ang sarili niya He hurt himself
- 4. Siya mismo ang tumingin sa akin It was he himself who examined me

W	Exercise	9
---	----------	---

Supply mismong + noun/ pronoun or a pronoun + mismo in the blank space: Don't forget the linker ng if one is necessary.

1.	Sumulat	THE PROPERTY OF	_ sa akin. (he/she)
2.	Ever president	ang bu	mili ng pagkain para sa party. (we)
3.	Nilinisan		ang kotse namin. ( they)
4.		_ba	ang nagdala ng mga maleta? (you)
5.	material and	ang pu	munta sa kasal ni Pinky. (Fred and friends)

### Exercise 10

Look at the pictures below while listening to your tape. Can you match the verb with the correct picture?







One-minute phrases

Saan ang punta mo? (sah-ahn ahng poon-tah moo?) Meaning where are you going? A very common question in Tagalog. It is not meant to be taken literally, requiring an explanation of where you are going. Rather, it is just another way of saying 'hello' or acknowledging you. It is just another way of making small talk.

Diyan lang (dyan lahng) Literally, just there. This phrase is usually used as a polite answer to the question: Saan ang punta mo?, Where are you going? As Saan ang punta mo? it is only a form of saying 'hello' it commonly elicits a simple reply such as D'yan lang, just there.

Wala nang oras (wah-lah nahng aw-rahs) Literally, no more time. Meaning we've run out of time/time is short. This short phrase can also mean: Wala nang panahon, time has run out. For example: Wala nang oras ang mga bisita upang matulog, The guests have no time left to go to sleep.

Maghintayan tayo (mahg-heen-tah-yahn tah-yaw) Meaning let's wait for one another. When two people agree to meet one another at an agreed location. For example: Maghintayan tayo sa harap ng McDonald's sa Kalye Lorenzo, Let's wait for one another in front of [the] McDonald's in Lorenzo Street.

Nag-uurong-sulong (nahg-oo-oo-rawng soo-lawng) Literally, moving backward, moving forward. Meaning 'hesitating'/ 'cannot make one's mind up'. For example: Nag-uurong-sulong si Maria kung pupunta siya sa Palawan bukas, Maria cannot make her mind up/ is hesitating as to whether she will go to Palawan tomorrow.

### Cultural Tip

Filipino weddings are formal occasions and so require formal attire. If invited to be a sponsor at a wedding, remember that it is an honour which carries responsibilities beyond the wedding day itself. The bride and groom look to their sponsors as dependable figures in whom they can rely for advice and other forms of concrete support throughout their married lives. Although Filipino weddings are formal, they are also very festive occasions steeped in many fascinating traditions. Relax, enjoy the experience and remember to make yourself at home!

# SA ISANG PISTANG BAYAN At a town fiesta

# In this unit you will learn how to

- celebrate the Filipino fiesta
- use the gerund
- handle a water buffalo!

# Celebrating the Filipino fiesta

# Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy have been invited to a barrio fiesta.

Bill Napakaraming tao sa pistang ito. Maraming dekorasyong palawit sa kalye, sarisaring bandera at talagang makulay ang buong lugar.

Louise Oo nga. Apat raw ang banda at maraming paputok mamayang gabi kapag nagkoronasyon ng reyna ng pistang bayan.

Roy Nagpunta ako sa kabayanan at maraming mga may puwesto. Karamihan ay mga tindang damit at laruan.

Louise Sang-ayon sa meyor mayroon daw reyna ng pistang bayan. Siya ang nanalo sa 'popularity contest.'
Mayaman siguro.

Roy Sa parke ay may tsubibo at mga labanan sa basketbol. Meron ding iba't ibang palaro para sa mga bata katulad ng pag-akyat sa kawayan, pagsungkit ng laso, pagsakay sa kalabaw, pagtakbo sa sako, pagkain ng murang niyog at iba pa. Gusto kong manood.

Louise Manood din tayo ng parada. May karosa at ililigid daw ang reyna at ang kaniyang mga abay. Gusto kong makita ang mga kasuotan.

Bill Tayo ay kumbidado sa bahay ng kapitan kasi *naghanda* raw sila para sa atin. Meron daw litsong baboy.

Roy O sige, pumunta tayo. Gusto kong makakita ng naglilitson.

Bill Oo nga.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
napakarami(ng)	so many	
pista(ng)	feast day	
dekorasyon(g)	decoration	
palawit	bunting	
sarisari(ng)	assorted	
talagang makulay	really colourful	
buong lugar	whole place	
kawayan	bamboo	
pagsungkit	hooking with a pole	
paputok	fireworks	
mamayang gabi	tonight	
kapag	when/during	
nagkoronasyon	crowned	-
nagpunta	went	
kabayanan	town	
puwesto	stalls	
karamihan	many of	
tinda(ng) damit	clothes for sale	
ililigid	will be driven around	
sang-ayon	according to	
reyna	queen	
nanalo	won	
mayaman	rich	
para sa atin	for us	
pistang bayan	town fiesta	
parke	park	
tsubibo	ferris wheel	
labanan	contest	
palaro	games	
katulad ng	like	
pag-akyat	climbing	
pagsakay	riding	
pagtakbo	running	
The state of the s	The second secon	

sack sako eating pagkain young coconut murang niyog watch manood parade parada procession cart karosa her kaniya(ng) consorts mga abay invited kumbidado captain kapitan prepared food naghanda pumunta

#### **Translation**

Bill The (town) fiesta is packed with people. The streets are decorated with different kinds of flags and the whole place is really colourful.

Louise I agree. I heard that there are four bands and there will be plenty of fireworks tonight during the coronation (of the fiesta queen).

Roy I went to the town centre and there are many stalls. Most (of them) are of clothes and toys.

Louise According to the mayor there will be a fiesta 'queen'. So she won the popularity contest! Perhaps she's rich.

Roy

There is a ferris wheel at the park and a basketball contest. There are also children's games like bamboo climbing, hooking the ribbon, riding the water buffalo, sack racing and eating young coconut. I'd like to go and watch.

Louise Let's also watch the parade. There is a decorated cart and the 'queen' and her consorts will be driven around (the town). I'd like to see their costumes.

Bill We have been invited to the Barrio Captain's house. They have made some preparations (for us). Apparently they are preparing *lechon*.\*

Roy Okay, let's go. I'd like to be able to see how to cook lechon.

Bill I agree.

\*Lechon: a traditional Filipino delicacy

Cooking lechon: A pole is pushed through a freshly slaughtered and cleaned suckling pig. The pig is then roasted on a spit over an open fire. The process takes between four and five hours during which the carcass is regularly turned and periodically daubed with oil to give it a crispy skin.

# Exercise 1 Mga tanong: (Questions)

1. Anong uri ng pagdiriwang ang pinuntahan nina Bill?

2. Kailan kokoronahan ang 'reyna'?

3. Anu-ano ang mga tinda sa kabayanan?

4. Sa palagay mo, ano ang mahalaga sa isang popularity contest?

5. Magbigay ng tatlong palaro para sa mga bata.

6. Bakit isasakay sa karosa ang reyna at mga abay?

7. Sino ang nag-imbita sa pamilyang Cook?

# **Language** skills

1. Pag + verb root Ka + verb root + an Ang + verb

No doubt you are familiar with stories from your childhood where frogs were transformed into handsome princes (or was it the other way round?) at the wave of a magic wand. The Tagalog language cannot endow you with magical powers but it too has its own form of magic wand with the ability of transforming verbs into nouns. This process is known as nominalisation, and the resulting word a gerund. This process of transforming verbs into nouns may at first sound rather complex, but is in fact quite simple. Notwithstanding a few exceptions in English, a gerund is basically a nominalised verb ending in 'ing' (i.e. cooking, singing, dancing etc.). In Tagalog, the prefix pag is added to a verb stem to produce a gerund. The gerund is commonly used in response to the question word 'how', expressing the manner in which a word is performed. For example: pag + kanta = pagkanta (singing). Gusto ko ang

pagkanta mo, I like your singing, pag + sayaw = pagsayaw (dancing). Ang pagsayaw ang paborito kong libangan, Dancing is my favourite pastime.

Another method of forming a noun from a verb stem is by using the prefix ka together with the suffix an. Ka and an sandwich the verb resulting in a nominalised verb. For example: Ka + galing + an = kagalingan, goodness, ka + ibig + an = kaibigan, 'friend' etc. Occasionally, the suffix an may become han if this makes the word easier to pronounce. For example: ka + ligaya + han = kaligayahan, happiness. Ka + ganda + han = kagandahan, beauty. When a verb stem ends with the letter 'd', this letter becomes an 'r' when forming a gerund with ka + an. For example: tamad, lazy = ka + tamad + an = katamaran, laziness. More examples follow.

Another way of transforming a verb into a noun in Tagalog is simply by placing the word ang before the verb (in any tense)! For example: 1) ang nagsasalita (the person talking) or speaker. Sino ang nagsasalita?, Who is the speaker?; ang maglalaba ko (the person washing clothes for me) my laundry person, Narito na ang maglalaba ko, My laundry person is already here.

### Further example sentences:

- 1. Kami ang mag-aayos ng mga gamit mo We will be the ones to tidy up your things
- 2. Maraming kaibigan si Larry

  Larry has many friends
- 3. Kumusta ang pagtulog mo? How's your sleeping? [how did you sleep?]
- 4. Gusto ng mga guro ang pagtula ni Doming
  The teachers liked Doming's poem recitation
- 5. Kilala mo ba ang nagsasalita?

  Do you know the person talking?
- 6. Ayaw ni Nanay ang pagsama ni Stephen sa barkada niya Mother doesn't like Stephen going out [with his gang]
- 7. Gabi na ang kaniyang pagsimba His/her churchgoing is/was quite late already
- 8. Ano ang ipinagbili mo? What (goods) did you sell?

### Exercise 2

Give the ka + an form of the following words (remember the rule about verb stems ending with the letter 'd'):

- 1. palad (palm) Answer:
- 1 tamad (lazy) Answer:
- Mala (none)
  Answer:
- 4. yaman (rich) Answer:
- 5. bahay (house) Answer:
- 6. mali (wrong) Answer:

### Some commonly nominalised verbs

### Pag prefix:

rag pictix.	
pagkain	eating
pag-alis	leaving
pagtawa	laughing
pagsalita	talking/speaking
paglapit	coming nearer
paglayo	going away
pag-ibig	love

### Ka prefix + an suffix:

Ka prefix + an suffix:	
kahinaan	weakness
kabaitan	kindness
kabutihan	goodness
karapatan	right
karunungan	knowledge
kasinungalingan	lies
katindihan	intensity
kalimitan	frequency
kalalakihan	menfolk
kababaihan	womanhood
katauhan	personality
katarungan	justice
kakayahan	ability

 20 <u>202</u> 7 1988 1	-
E	
Exercise	
	1000

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate noun from the two preceding lists.

1.	ay lakas.	
2.	Puro daw ar	ng sinasabi ng mga politiko.
3.	Dalawa ang pila. Isa sa	mga at isa sa mga
4.	Lahat tayo ay may	sa mundong ito.
5.		sa trabahong ito?

### Exercise 4 Listening and recognising

Listen to the conversation on the tape. You will hear a number of nominalised pag and ka + an words used. Can you pick out the words used from those listed here?

karapatan	pagngiti		
kaligayahan	kasabihan		
paglabas	kasunduan		
pagpunta	kalimitan		
pag-alis	kasalanan		
pagsama	pagtawa		
kaayusan	pagsulat		
kasamaan	pagtalima		
pagkain	pagpasok		

### Dialogue 2

The Cook family continue to enjoy their day out at the barrio Fiesta. Bill is in conversation with one of the guests at the Barrio Captain's house.

Rudy Kumusta po kayo? Si Rudy po ako. Sana nag-eenjoy kayo sa aming pistang bayan.

Bill Oo. Nagtataka lang ako. Parang gumagastos ang mga tao kapag may pistang bayan. Kahit saan ako tumingin, may pagkain at may inumin.

Rudy Ganoon nga po. Nag-iipon ng pera ang mga tao sa loob ng isang taon upang makapaghanda sa pista.

Bill Hindi yata tama iyan kasi magpapagod ka sa trabaho sa loob ng isang taon pagkatapos gagastusin mo ng

minsanan. Biglang mawawala ang inipon mong pera dahil lang sa pista.

Rudy Totoo iyan subali't kaugalian na ng mga Pilipino iyan. Kapag naubos na ang pera, bahala na!

Bill Ganoon ba?

Rudy Opo. Kadalasan pa nga ang iba nangungutang para makapaghanda lang.

Bill Mahirap din pala ang kaugaliang ito, ano?

Rudy Talaga – pero sinasabi lang namin – 'bahala na!'

	CONTRACTOR OF SECURITION OF A PARTY OF SECURITION OF SECUR
Tulasalitaan	Vocabulary
pagkatapos	afterwards
gagastusin	will be spent
nag-eenjoy	enjoying
bigla(ng)	suddenly
pistang bayan	town fiesta
kahit saan	anywhere
tumingin	look
may pagkain	there is food
totoo	true
ganoon nga	really like that
nag-iipon ng pera	saving money
kapag	if/when
sa loob ng	in(side)
isang taon	one year
upang	in order to
makapaghanda	be able to prepare
magpapagod	to become tired
sa trabaho	at work
minsanan	in one go
mawawala	will disappear
ang inipon	the savings
dahil lang	just because of
subali't	but
kaugalian	custom
naubos	finished
bahala na	come what may
kung minsan	sometime
nangungutang	borrow money
sinasabi lang	just say

### **Translation**

Rudy How are you sir? I'm Rudy. I hope you're enjoying our town fiesta.

Bill Yes (I am). I'm just wondering. It looks as though people like to spend money when there is a fiesta. Everywhere I look there is food and drink.

**Rudy** It's really like that. People save money all year in order to enjoy the fiesta.

Bill I'm not sure that's a good idea because people work very hard at work all year just to spend (their earnings) in one go. Their savings suddenly disappear just because of the fiesta.

**Rudy** That's true but that's already a Filipino custom. When the money happens to run out, leave it to destiny!

Bill Is that so?

**Rudy** Yes. Often times others even borrow money just to prepare.

Bill This custom is rather difficult, isn't it?

Rudy Indeed - but we just say 'bahala na'. (see cultural tip)

# Exercise 5

Which of the following statements are true? If the statement is false, can you give the correct answer in Tagalog?

1. Ayaw gumastos ng mga tao kapag may pistang bayan.

2. Nag-iipon ang mga tao ng pera upang bumili ng kalabaw.

3. Unti-unti nilang ginagastos ang perang inipon nila.

4. Mabuting kaugalian ang magdiwang ng pista.

5. Mabuti para sa lahat ng tao ang pista.

# Exercise 6: Listening & Speaking

On your way to a fiesta, you meet some friends on the road. You stop to have a chat before continuing. Use the suggestions to help you fill out your part of the dialogue. Use the tape to practise the dialogue:

Nonoy Kaibigan, kumusta ba? Dadalo ka ba sa pista?

**Ikaw** (Say yes, we are going to the fiesta)

Nonoy Marami nang tao doon. Mahilig ka bang sumayaw?

Ikaw (Tell him you like dancing very much)

Nonoy Mabuti!! Maganda ang tugtog at may pagkain din.

Ikaw (Ask him where the food and drinks are being sold)

Nonoy Doon, malapit sa Munisipyo.

Ikaw (Thank him and invite him to join you)

Nonoy Hindi na, salamat. Busog na ako.

Magkita na lang tayo mamaya, sa sayawan.

Ikaw (Tell him that you will look for him)

Nonoy O, sige. Paalam na kaibigan!

Ikaw (Goodbye)

# **Language** skills

### 2. Maki, Makipag, Makipang Participational verb forms in active verbs

Tagalog reserves a special group of verb forms to express actions done collectively or requiring the participation of others. These verb forms are known as participational or social verbs. Social verbs are characterised by the prefix maki for um and ma verbs, by makipag for mag verbs, and finally by makipang for mang verbs. Since participational verbs are actor focused (i.e., with the emphasis on the 'doer' of the action), it follows logically that they only take active verbs. For example: Makiupo tavo doon, Let's share the seat over there. Nakikipaglaro ka ba sa mga bagong kapitbahay?, Do you play with the new neighbours?. Kahapon, nakipamaril sina John, Yesterday, John went shooting (with others). In some cases, when the 'doer' of the action takes part in an activity previously initiated by another person, this is expressed by means of the sa form. For example: Nag-swimming sila sa ilog; (prior action) nakipagswimming ako sa kanila, They went swimming in the river; I went swimming with them. Kumakain sila ng pansit; nakikain ako sa kanila. They were eating noodles; I ate with them.

### How to form participational verbs

### Maki (source um verbs)

Maki (prefix) + bili (verb root) buy
maki + bili = makibili to buy with = infinitive
maki + ki + bili = makikibili will buy with = future
naki + ki + bili = nakikibili buying with = present
naki + bili = nakibili bought with = past

### Makipag (source mag verbs)

Makipag (prefix) + laro (verb root) to play with = infinitive maki + ki + pag + laro = makikipaglaro will play with = future naki + ki + pag + laro = nakikipaglaro playing with = present naki + pag + laro = nakipaglaro played with = past

### Makipang (source mang verbs)

Makipang becomes makipam (prefix) + balita (drop b) = alita makipam + alita = makipamalita to share news with = infinitive makiki + pa + ma + lita = makikipamalita will share news with = future

nakiki + pa + ma + lita = nakikipamalita sharing news with = present

naki + pa + ma + lita = nakipamalita shared news with = past

### Sentence variations

Verb + actor + social counterpart Nakikipag-away si Joselito kay Toto Joselito is quarrelling/ fighting with Toto.

Pseudo-verb + verb + actor + social counterpart Ayaw makipag-usap ni Will kay Gladys. Will doesn't want to talk to Gladys.

Question word + verb + Social counterpart + Time Sino ang makikipagsayaw sa akin mamaya? Who will dance with me later on?

### Exercise 7

Translate the following into Tagalog:

- 1. Auntie Marge will be eating with them tonight. (kumain)
- 2. Where did you ask for a seat? (maupo)
- 3. Are you going shopping with Auntie Dot? (mamili)
- 4. Jose is getting into a fight again. (mag-away)
- 5. I'm still talking with Janet. (mag-usap)

A few participational verbs indicate a request to use other people's facilities:

makikain to ask to share some food with makiinom to request a drink makisindi to request a light makitulog to request to share sleeping facilities of makihiga to request to share resting facilities of makisuvo to request to do something for makipagluto to request to use cooking facilities of makitawag to request to use the telephone of makisakay to request to use other people's transport makiangkas to request a lift

Sentences in **maki** (remember that requests and suggestions use the infinitive form):

- 1. Maaari po ba kaming makiinom? Could we ask for a drink?
- 2. Puwede bang makiupo si Kim dito? Could Kim sit here?
- 3. Puwede bang makipamasyal kami sa inyo? Could we take a stroll with you?
- 4. Maaari bang makisakay kami hanggang sa bayan? Could we kindly have a lift to the town?
- 5. Puwede bang huwag kang manigarilyo dito? Could you not smoke here?
- 6. Makisindi ka sa lalaking iyon. Ask for a light from that man.

### Some reciprocal social verbs:

makipag-away to fight with
makipagtalo to argue with
makipaglaban to fight with
makipag-usap to converse with
makipagkamay to shake hands with
makipaghiwalay to separate from

### Example sentences:

1. Nakikipag-away na naman si Matthew Matthew is fighting again

2. Nakipagtalo si Sue sa opisyal Sue argued with the official

3. Gusto kong makipag-usap sa iyo nang masinsinan I want to talk to you seriously

4. Nakipagkamay si Lennard sa kaniyang kalaban Lennard shook hands with his opponent

5. Ayaw makipaghiwalay ni Anto sa asawa niya Anto doesn't like to separate from his wife

# Exercise 8

Change the following sentences into either a request or suggestion (remember to change the actor or the time element):

Example: Makikitawag ako sa telepono bukas. Request form: Maaari bang makitawag ako sa telepono bukas?

1. Nakipag-usap kami kay Ginoong Reyes.

2. Nakitulog ako sa kanila.

3. Nakikipag-away kayo sa mga bata.

4. Makikisakay kami kina Baby.

5. Nakikipagluto ang mga bisita dito.

# Handling a water buffalo!

# Dialogue 3

Hill, Louise and Roy are visiting a farm in the barrio. Roy is learning how to handle the carabao (water buffalo).

Roy Ganito ba ang paghawak sa renda ng kalabaw? Baka suwagin ako nito.

Kiko Puwede na sa unang beses. Hindi, mabait iyan. Hindi ka susuwagin niyan. Hawakan mo nang maluwag. Ganiyan nga. Tapos medyo kausapin mo siya. Sabihin mo rin sa kaniya 'Tsk...Tsk' kung gusto mo siyang lumakad.

Roy Ganoon lang pala. Uulitin ko. Ganito ba? 'Tsk...Tsk...' Kiko Oo, ganiyan. Magaling ka palang humawak ng kalabaw.

Kung gusto mo, sumakay ka.

Roy May kaunti akong karanasan noong nagtrabaho ako sa isang sabsaban ng kabayo sa Inglaterra.

Kiko Ganoon ba, kaya pala madali kang matuto!

Roy Hindi ba higit na mahirap ang humawak ng kabayo.

Kiko Hindi naman.

Roy Sasabihin ko sa mga kaibigan ko na nakahawak ako ng kalabaw. Puwede mo ba akong kunan ng retrato?

Klko Bakit hindi?

Roy Salamat. Teka, kukunin ko lang ang kamera ko sa bahay.

Klko O, sige.

Tulusalitaan	Vocabulary	
ganito	like this	
ang paghawak	how to hold	
renda	reins	
baka	might	RIN
nuwagin	gore (bull)	St. P. W. C. T. ST. St.
nito - I	this (ng form)	N 71
higit	more	100
na unang beses	for a first time	To sparit

handling ang paghawak hawakan hold that (ng form) nivan karanasan experience nagtrabaho worked sabsaban stable kabayo horse kaya pala no wonder madali(ng) easily matuto to learn mahirap difficult sasabihin will tell nang maluwag loosely ganiyan like that medyo sort of kung gusto mo(ng) if you want lumakad to walk/ move kausapin talk to sabihin tell/ say sa kaniya to him/her uulitin will repeat magaling good at/ clever nakahawak managed to handle kunan take bakit hindi why not teka just a moment will get/fetch kukunin sumakay ride

#### Translation

Roy Kiko, is this how to hold the reins of the carabao? He won't try to swipe me, will he?

Kiko Not bad for a first timer. No, he's a good-natured carabao. He won't charge you. (Just) Hold him loosely. Yes, just like that. Talk to him too. Just say 'Tsk... Tsk' if you want him to move.

Roy Ah! So it's that easy. Let me try: Like this? 'Tsk...Tsk...'

**Kiko** Yes! Just like that. You're very good at handling a carabao. If you like, you can even ride him.

Roy I've got a little bit of experience from when I used to work at a stable back in England.

Kiko Is that so? No wonder you are learning so quickly!

# Exercise 9

Answer the following questions:

1. Ano ang ginagawa ni Roy?

Ano ang dapat (should) niyang gawin (do) upang (so that) hindi siya suwagin ng kalabaw?

1. Maari bang sumakay si Roy sa kalabaw?

4. Ano ang dahilan (reason) at magaling si Roy sumakay ng kalabaw?

# Manguage skills

3. Ganito Like this Ganiyan Like that Ganoon Like that (over there)

In our dialogue, Roy Cook was learning how to handle a water buffalo or carabao. He asked Kiko to comment on how well he was doing. You may have noticed the words: ganito, like this, ganiyan, like that, ganoon, like that (over there). These words are commonly used in Tagalog in connection with the demonstration of an action. On most occasions, ganito, ganiyan and ganoon are used together with a gerund. For example: Ganito ba ang paghiwa ng sibuyas?, Is this how onions are cut? Ganiyan ang pagpinta ng dingding, That's (the way) to paint the wall. Ganoon ang sinabi ni Dave, Dave said something like that. The words ganito, ganiyan and ganoon may also be used in situations where two objects are compared. When this happens, then the stem of the adjective is profixed by the letters ka. For example: ka + layo (from malayo fur = kalayo) Ganito ba kahaba ang tali ng kahon?. Is the string of the box as long as this? Ganiyan kaganda ang bulaklak na rosas. The rose is as beautiful as that. Ganoon kalaki ang mapa ng Cebu, The map of Cebu is as big as that.

#### Sentence variations in the use of ganito, ganiyan, and ganoon.

Qualifier + ganiyan + gerund + object

Hindi ganiyan ang pagsulat ng abakada

That's not how to write the ABC / Writing the ABC is not like that

Ganito + particle + comparison + subject/tonic

Ganito + particle + comparison + subject/topic Ganito pala kalayo ang baryo ninyo So your barrio is as far as this

Qualifier ganoon comparison subject/topic
Walang ganoon kasarap ang luto ni Aling Puring
Nothing like that is as tasty as Aling Puring's cooking

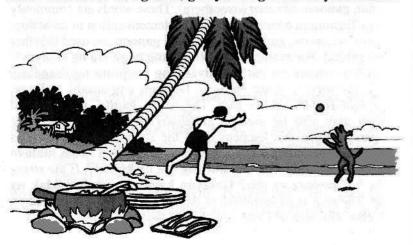
# Exercise 10

Reorganise the following into coherent Tagalog sentences:

- 1. sa amin kabait ganoon si Ginoong Cruz.
- 2. ba ng silyang rattan ganito ang paggawa?
- 3. ang pagsara paano ng kahong ito?
- 4. ang pagluto hindi ng adobo ba ganito?
- 5. sa akin mo ang pagtugtog sabihin ng himig (piece) na ito.

# Exercise 11

Look at the picture. Which of the words best describes the articles listed beneath it? Use ganito, ganiyan or ganoon as your answer.



apoy	EN THIS I	
aso		
bata	Hanteti	
kuldero		ni i i m
barko	g gurin ell	eccupi.
kutsara	Mallion, III	
bola	The Law Y	1500
ulap	HERVY PERSON	EV.
tinidor	A STREET	1 37 1
punong niyog	ACTOR -	
bahay	agida kanina	
pinggan		Tulsas

#### **One-minute phrases**

Saka na lang (sah-kah nah lahng) Literally, later already just. Meaning later on. This phrase is commonly used to indicate that something has been postponed. For example: Saka na lang tayo mamasyal, Why don't we just take [our] stroll later on.

Baka sakali (bah-kah sah-kah-lee) Literally, might perhaps. This Tagalog phrase is similar in meaning to the English expression 'just in case'. It denotes the need to be prepared. For example, Maghanda tayo at baka sakaling dumating ang mga bisita, Let us make some preparations in case the visitors arrive.

At sa wakas (aht sah wah-kahs) Literally, and at the end. Similar to the English exclamation 'At last!'. For example: At sa wakas, dumating din ang lolo at lola, At last, grandfather and grandmother [have finally] arrived!

Ako ang bahala (ah-kaw ahng bah-hah-lah) Meaning, I will take responsibility. This Tagalog phrase is similar in meaning to the English expression 'Don't worry, leave it all to me'.

Masyadong magulo (mahs-yah-dawng mah-goo-law) Meaning, very messy/ entangled. This expression is used to express lack of clarity in another person's words or explanations. Sometimes it is used in connection with a troublemaker. For example: Masyadong magulo ang usapan ng mga politiko sa Congress, The conversation of the politicians in Congress is rather messy.

# Cultural Tip

Certain Filipino traits may sometimes be open to misinterpretation by the foreigner. One such trait is the common Filipino attitude of bahala na \* (literally, it's up to God). At first glance, this could be understood as an attitude of fatalism or resignation in the face of difficulties or decisions. The Filipino could be accused of giving up too quickly. While this may be valid interpretation in some circumstances, it is not always necessarily the case. Filipino society is an intricate web of interdependent relationships which carry mutual obligations. Within these relationships, when expectations are not fulfilled or realised, the frustration experienced may result in the bahala na attitude surfacing. Rather than confront the source of the frustration, the Filipino shrugs his or her shoulders and says 'just let it be'. Avoidance may seem to be wiser move than open or direct confrontation of circumstances beyond his or her control. (\* Bathala is an ancient Filipino name for god, pre-dating the Christian era.)

# 19 ANG BUHAY SA BARYO Life in the barrio

#### In this unit you will learn how to

- live in the barrio
- help on the farm
- use causative verbs

# Living in the barrio

# Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook are enjoying their stay with Kiko and his family.

Louise Tingnan mo ang mga punong-kahoy. Nagpapaganda ang

mga ito sa paligid ng bahay.

Bill Oo nga. Ganoon din ang mga iba't ibang halaman. Meron silang sampagita, rosal at malaking puno ng ilangilang. Nagpapabango ang mga ito sa kapaligiran.

Roy Alam ba ninyo na may maliit na palaisdaan si Kiko? Nagpapalaki siya ng bangus. Sumunod kayo sa akin, ituturo ko sa inyo.

Louise Madali lang tayo kasi nagpaluto ng mga kakanin si Kiko at ang asawa niya. Nagpa-akyat din sila ng murang niyog para sa inumin.

Bill Anu-anong mga kakanin?

Louise Bibobilo, bibingka, kutsinta at diladila.

Roy Masarap ang bilobilo lalo na kung may pansit.

Bill Talaga! Ito ang buhay.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tingnan	look
mga punong-kahoy	fruit trees
nagpapaganda	making (something) pretty
paligid	around
kakanin	rice cakes
nagpapa-akyat	asking someone to climb
mura(ng) niyog	young coconut
iba't iba(ng)	different kinds
halaman	plants
Sampagita	sampagita (the national flower)
rosal	gardenia
ilangilang	ilangilang
nagpapabango	making (something) fragrant
kapaligiran	surroundings
alam	know
palaisdaan	fish pond
nagpapalaki	making (something) grow
bangus	milkfish
sumunod sa akin	follow me
tuturo	will show/point
madali	easy
ang	only
nagpaluto	caused someone to cook
anu-ano(ng)	what (plural)
kakanin	rice cakes (local delicacies)
oilobilo	a delicacy (marble-shaped)
oibingka	a delicacy (see page 112)
cutsinta	a delicacy
lila-dila	a delicacy (tongue-shaped)

#### Translation

Louise Look at the fruit trees. They make a beautiful sight around the house.

Bill Oh yes. It's the same with the different types of plants. They even have sampaguita, rosal and a very large ilangilang tree. They make the surrounding (area) smell fragrant.

Did you know that Kiko also has a small fish pond? He is Roy trying to raise milkfish. Why not come along with me and I'll show you (the fishpond).

Louise We have to be quick because Kiko and his wife have cooked some delicacies (for us). He's also asked someone to pick some young coconuts for us to drink.

What kind of rice cakes are they? Bill Louise Bilobilo, bibingka, kutsinta and dila-dila. Bilobilo is delicious, especially with noodles. Roy I agree! This is the life! Bill

# Exercise 1

Using Dialogue 1, answer the following questions in Tagalog:

1. Ano ang nagpapaganda sa paligid ng bahay?

Magbigay ng mababangong halaman na alam mo.

Ano ang ginawa ni Kiko upang magpalaki ng isda?

4. Bakit kailangang magmadali ang pamilya Cook?

5. Ipaliwanag kung bakit sinabi ni Bill 'Ito ang buhay'!



# Language skills:

# 1. Magpa + Active To cause, to let, to have, to permit to ask, to make etc.

'Tessie is *letting* the corn dry'. 'I will allow Elvira to cook tonight'. 'Bob will let the tomatoes grow in his garden.' 'I'll ask Lagring to sew a dress for me.' 'Why don't you make Erwin clean your car? 'Amado permitted me to walk'. All of the italicised words in these sentences are examples of indirect action verbs, also known as causatives. Tagalog uses causative verbs to point to an action performed by another person. In active verb sentences the causative is preceded by an ang form word. For example, Nagpadala si Samantha ng regalo sa akin, Samantha sent some gifts to me. Nagpagawa sina Kim at Sue ng garahe, Kim and Sue had a garage built. Magpapasama ako kina Rosie at Aida sa ospital, I'll ask Rosie and Aida to accompany me to the hospital. Notice that the ang form does not indicate the identity of the person actually performing the action, but rather, it indicates the identity of the one causing, letting, having, asking, making or permitting the action to be performed. The action is therefore said to be indirect or 'caused' by the other .

Dialogue 1 offers us a few examples: nagpapaganda (from ganda, beautiful) meaning 'making something beautiful', nagpapabango (from bango, fragrant) meaning 'making something fragrant', nagpaluto (from luto, cook) had someone cook something, nagpapa-akyat (from akyat, climb) having someone climb (in this case, a tree). With active verbs, the causative is easily recognised by the prefix magpa followed by the verb. In magpa causatives, the causer is identified in the ang form (si, sina, ako, ka, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila etc.) while the caused (i.e., the person caused/asked/led to perform the action) is identified in the sa form (kay, kina, sa akin, sa iyo, sa kaniya, sa amin, sa atin, sa inyo, sa kanila etc.) The object (which may be optional) is the ng form.

In order to avoid confusion, it is worth noting that some mag form verbs beginning with the letters pa may be mistakenly identified as causatives, even though they don't carry a causative meaning.

These verbs are commonly known as dead pa verbs. For example: paalam (goodbye), magpaalam, to say goodbye. Nagpaalam ka ba kay Jayne?; Did you say goodbye to Jayne?, parusa (punishment) magparusa, to punish. Sino ang nagparusa sa magnanakaw?, Who punished the burglar?, palabas (show) magpalabas, to give a show. Nagpapalabas na sila sa oras na ito, They have already started the show at this time, pakana (plan) magpakana, to plan. Nagpapakana na ang meyor ng programa para sa pista, The mayor is already planning the programme for the fiesta.

Three important rules in the magpa causative form:

- 1. The causer is in the ang form.
- 2. The caused is in the sa form.
- 3. The object (optional) is in the ng form.

#### Some example sentences

Nagpapabili ako (causer) kay Stewart (caused) ng kamatis at sibuyas (object) sa palengke (place) I had Stewart buy some tomatoes and onions for me.

#### Changing the tense of the Magpa verb:

magpa (prefix) + um verb root:

Magpa + bili = magpabili to have etc. someone buy = infinitive Magpa + pa + bili = magpapabili will have etc. someone buy = future Nagpa + pa + bili = nagpapabili having etc. someone to buy = present Nagpa + bili = nagpabili had etc. someone to buy = past

#### magpa (prefix) + mag verb root:

Magpa + luto = magpaluto to cause etc. to cook = infinitive
Magpa + pa + luto = magpapaluto will cause etc. to cook = future
Nagpa + pa + luto = nagpapaluto causing etc. to cook = present
Nagpa + luto = nagpaluto caused etc. to cook = past

#### Some sentence variations in magpa causative:

Verb + causer + caused + object + time etc.

Magpapaluto ako kay Jamie ng pansit bukas.

I will ask Jamie to cook Filipino noodles tomorrow

Verb + particle + causer + caused

Nagpapaganda raw ang make-up sa mukha ng babae. It is said that make-up makes a woman's face beautiful

Question word causer + verb + object + caused Bakit kayo nagpapabili ng pagkain sa kanila?

Why are you asking them to buy food?

Verb + actor + time Nagpalabas sila kagabi

They put on a show last night

# Exercise 2

Can you change the following into magpa sentences?

1. Kumukuha ako ng libro sa kanila.

2. Maglalabas ba tayo ng silya?

3. Nagpasok ba si Henry ng mga maleta kanina?

4. Saan ka bumibili ng gulay at prutas?

5. Bumasa siya ng aklat sa klase.

# Exercise 3 Listening, speaking and understanding

Your friend Edgar has invited you to attend his birthday party. It is the first time you have attended a Filipino birthday party and you are keen to watch and see what happens. Listen to the tape. Imagine that it is you who are speaking.

1. How many magpa causative verbs can you recognise?

Your friend arrives late and wants to know what has been happening. Listen again to the tape and respond to each of your friend's questions.

# Helping on the farm

# Dialogue 2

The Cook family are giving their hosts a hand on the farm.

Bill Anong oras sa umaga ninyo pinakakain ang inyong baboy? Ako na lang ang magpapakain, Kiko.

Kiko O sige, bahala ka. Pinakakain ko sila sa mga alas siyete nang umaga. Kasabay ng aming almusal. Ako kadalasan ang nagpapakain sa kanila.

Hill Gusto mo bang pakainin ko rin ang mga manok?

Roy Ako na lang ang magpapakain sa mga manok.

Kiko Kumain muna tayo ng almusal. Pinagluto ko na si Misis ng ating aalmusalin.

IIII Okey lang.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
ang mga manok	the chickens
a umaga	in the morning
pinakakain	give food/feed
magpapakain	will feed
pinagluto	asked to cook
aalmusalin	what someone's having for breakfast
kasabay	at the same time
aming almusal	our breakfast
kndalasan	often
nagpapakain	give them food
gusto mo ba(ng)	would you like
pakainin	to serve/feed
magpapakain	will cause to eat

#### Translation

What time in the morning do you have to feed your pigs?
Could I feed them?

**Kiko** Well all right, it's up to you. I feed them at around 7.00 in the morning, at [about] the same time [as] we have our breakfast. Usually I feed them myself.

Bill Would you like me feed the chickens too?

Roy Could I feed the chickens?

Kiko Let's eat our breakfast first. I've already asked my wife to prepare our breakfast.

Bill That's OK by me.

# Exercise 4

Answer the following questions:

- 1. Ano ang gustong gawin ni Bill?
- 2. Sino ang madalas nagpapakain sa mga baboy?
- 3. Ano ang gustong pakainin ni Roy?
- 4. Bakit kailangan muna nilang kumain ng almusal?

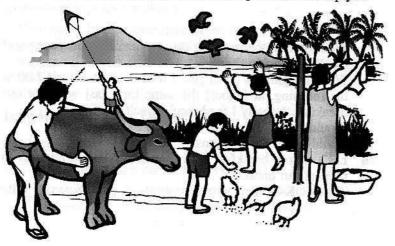
# Exercise 5

Following the English as closely as possible, translate the following into Tagalog:

- 1. ... will have someone write a letter...
- 2. ... had someone clean the car...
- 3. ... asking someone to sew a dress...
- 4. ... having someone to cut [my] hair...
- 5. ... making yourself beautiful...

# Exercise 6

Look at the picture of a typical rural Filipino. Using magpa and pa-in, pag-in and pang-in words, create a present tense sentence to describe each of the actions you can see. For example: Nagpapaligo si Mang Kiko ng kalabaw sa ilog. 'Mang Kiko is washing the carabao in the river.' Use the word stems provided to help you.



ligo	lipad	kain	alis	tuyo	

# Language skills

# 2. Pa-in (ma/um verb roots), papag-in (mag verb roots), papang-in (mang verb roots)

Having managed to digest the basics of magpa causative verbs (causer = ang form, caused = sa form), you will be delighted to hear that there are other variations and forms of causative verbs, too! Look at the simple explanation that follows. You will soon notice that in these causative variations, the person permitting or eausing the action is identified in the ng form (ni, nina, ko, mo, nlya, namin, natin, ninyo, nila) while the person caused to act (the 'doer' of the action) is in the ang form (si sina, ako, ka/ikaw, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila). Note also that these variations are used in connection with active verbs.

#### Other causative forms

#### Ma and um verbs

Prefix pa + verb root + suffix in.

For example pa + tulug + in = patulugin, to cause someone to sleep Patutulugin(verb) ni Tessie (causer) ang bata (caused) Tessie will put the child to sleep

#### Mag verbs

Prefix papag + verb root + suffix in.

For example papag + lutu + in = papaglutuin to have someone cook Pinapagluto (verb) kami (caused) ng guro (causer) sa klase namin Our teacher had us cook in our class

#### Mang verbs

Prefix papang + verb root + suffix in.

For example papang + ibig + in = papangibigin to cause/permit to pay court to

Pinapangibig (verb)ng Lola (causer) si Ian (caused) kay Karen Lola is permitting Ian to pay court to Karen

Four important rules to remember in the pa-in, papag-in, papang-in causative form:

- 1. The causer is the ng form.
- 2. The caused is the ang form.
- 3. The object (which can be optional) is another ng form.
- 4. There may be a receiver of the action which is a sa form.

#### Example sentences

pa-in Pinabili (verb) ng guro (causer) ang mga estudyante (caused) ng aklat (object) The teacher asked/had/caused the student to buy a book.

papag-in Papaglabahin (verb) natin (causer) sila (caused) mamaya (time). We will have/make them wash clothes later.

papang-in Papamamalantsahin (verb) mo (causer) ba (particle) si Dorothy (caused)? Will you have/ask Dorothy to iron clothes?

#### Changing the tense of the pa-in, papag-in, papang-in verb:

Pa (prefix) + verb root + in (suffix) Origin: ma/um verbs
pa + higa + in = pahigain to make etc. someone lie down = infinitive
pa + hi + higa + in = pahihigain will make etc. someone lie down =
future

p + in + a + hi + higa pinahihiga making etc. someone lie down = present

p + in + a + higa = pinahiga made etc. someone lie down = past

Papag (prefix) + verb root + in (suffix) Origin: mag verbs
Papag + linis + in = papaglinisin to make etc. someone to clean =

infinitive

Papag + li + linis + in= papaglilinisin will make etc. someone to clean = future

P+ in+a +pa+pag+linis = pinapapaglinis making etc. someone to clean = present

P + in + a + pag + linis = pinapaglinis made etc. someone to clean = past

Papang (prefix) + verb root + in (suffix) Origin: mang verbs

Papang+isda+in = papangisdain to permit etc. someone to fish = infinitive

Papangi+ngisda+in = papangingisdain will permit etc. someone to fish = future

P+in+a+pa+pang+isda = pinapapangisda permitting etc. someone to fish = present

P+in+a+pang+isda = pinapangisda permitted etc. someone to fish = past

#### Some sentence variations in pa-in, papag-in, papang-in causative

Verb + causer + caused + object
Pabibilhin ni Tony si Mario ng aklat
Tony will ask Mario to buy a book

Question marker + caused + causer + object + time Sino ang pinaglaba ni Rene ng kumot kahapon? Whom did Rene ask to wash the bedsheets yesterday?

Verb + causer + caused + place Pinapapangisda ng gobyerno ang mga mangingisda sa lugar na ito. The government allows the fishermen to fish in this area

# Exercise 7 Listening, speaking and understanding

Listen to the tape. You will hear a number of statements, each read out three times. Two of the statements use the incorrect verb form while one of the statements uses correct verb form (pa-in, papagin, papang-in). Which of the statements is correct? Repeat the correct verb form aloud, then translate into English.

### Dialogue 3

Roy and Bill are giving Kiko more help on the farm.

Bill Kiko, tutulungan ka namin sa pagtatanim. Narito rin si Roy.

Kiko Salamat. Ipalalagay ko kay Roy ang damo sa sako.

Bill Gusto mo bang ipatapon ko ang mga damo?

Kiko Mabuti. Ipapipitas ko rin sa kaniya ang mga hinog na guyabano. At saka, maaari bang palagyan ko kay Roy ng tubig ang mga banga? Kailangan ang tubig para sa inumin ng mga hayop.

Bill Sige lang. Mabuti at makatutulong siya dito. Pinagamasan mo ba ang iyong palayan? Mukhang malinis ito.

Kiko Oo. Oo nga pala, uminom muna tayo ng sabaw ng murang niyog.

Bill Mabuting ideya. O, heto na si Roy.

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
tutulungan	will help
pagtatanim	planting
narito	here
ipalalagay	will cause to put
makatutulong	will be able to help
ipatapon	to cause to throw
damo	grass
mukhang malinis	looks quite clean
ipapipitas	will have something picked
hinog	ripe
guyabano	sour sap
at saka	and
maaari	can/possible
palagyan	to ask to be put
banga	earthen pot
hayop	animal
pinagamasan	had it cleaned
palayan	rice field
oo nga pala	by the way
sabaw	thin soup
mura(ng)	young state of the same of the
niyog	coconut
ideya	idea

#### Translation

**Bill** Kiko, we're going to help you with the planting. Roy is coming as well.

Kiko Thank you. I'm going to ask Roy to put the grass in the sacks.

Bill Shall I get Roy to throw the grass away?

Kiko Yes, that's a good idea. I will have him pick the ripe guyabanos too. Can I ask Roy to put some water into the earthen pots? The animals need water to drink.

Bill All right. (It's) Good that he'll be able to help here. Did you have the field cleaned up? It looks quite clean.

Kiko Yes. By the way, let's have some coconut juice to drink.

Bill Good idea. Thank you. Here comes Roy.

#### Exercise 8 Sagutin

LIFE IN THE BARRIO

- 1. Ano ang ipalalagay ni Kiko sa sako?
- 2. Sino ang magtatapon ng damo?
- 3. Bakit kailangang pitasin na ang guyabano?
- 4. Bakit sila naglalagay ng tubig sa banga?
- 5. Saan kinukuha ang sabaw ng niyog?

#### Exercise 9

Here are some familiar daily activities. Can you identify the causative verb?



# **Languages skills**

# 3. Ipa (in and i verbs), pa-an (an verbs) To cause, to let, to let, to make, to allow to have, to permit

The causative in passive verb sentences is easily recognised by the prefix **ipa** for **in** and **i** verbs, and the prefix / suffix **pa-an** for **an** verbs. The **ipa** and **pa-an** causatives both take the **ng** form when identifying the causer while using the **sa** form to identify the person caused to perform the action. In **ipa** and **pa-an** sentences, the object is identified by the ang form. Let's look at some example sentences:

ipa +tapon = ipatapon, to cause to be thrown Ipatatapon ni Ginang Cruz kay Henry ang mga lumang kahon Mrs Cruz will have Henry throw out the old boxes

ipa + bili = ipabili, to cause to be bought
 Ipabibili ko kay Abner ang mga kailangan ko sa pagtuturo
 I will have Abner buy my teaching materials

Three important rules to remember in the ipa and pa-an causatives forms:

- 1. The causer is the ng form.
- 2. The caused is the sa form.
- 3. The object (optional) is the ang form.

Some example sentences:

Ipasasara (verb) namin (causer) kina Bebot (caused) ang mga bintana (object) dito (place). We will have Bebot and her friends shut the windows here.

Ipinalalagay (verb) po (particle) ito (object) ni Ginoong Castillo (causer) sa mesa (place). Sir/madam, Mr. Castillo wants this placed on the table.

Ipapabuhat (verb) na lang (particles) namin (causer) ang mga maleta (object) sa kargador (caused) mamaya (time). We will just have the porter carry the suitcases later on.

Pinasasarhan (verb) ng gobyerno (causer) ang tambakan ng basura (object). The Government is having the rubbish dump closed.

Gusto (pseudo-verb) mo (causer) ba[ng] (particle) palagyan (verb) ng asukal (object) ang kape (receiver of the action)? Would you like some sugar (to be put) in the coffee?

\*Note: The an verb takes a ng object as well as actor.

Changing the tense of the Ipa and Pa-an causatives:

Ipa (prefix) + (in and i verb root)

ipa + tapon = ipatapon to cause etc. to be thrown = infinitive ipa + ta + tapon ipatatapon will cause etc. to be thrown = future ipi +na+ta+tapon ipinatatapon causing etc. to be thrown = present ipi + na + tapon inpinatapon was caused etc. to be thrown = past

Pa (prefix) + (verb root) + an (suffix)

pa + hugas + an pahugasan to cause etc. to be washed = infinitive pa+hu + hugas + an pahuhugasan will cause etc. to be washed = future pina + hu + hugas + an pinahuhugasan causing etc. to be washed = present

pina + hugas + an pinahugasan caused etc. to be washed = past

#### Some sentence variations in the ipa and pa-an causative forms

Verb + causer + caused + object
Pinapalitan ko kay Citta ang binili kong
pantalon

I had Citta exchange the (pair of) trousers I bought

Qualifier + causer + verb + object Hindi nila ipinatapos ang bakod They didn't have the fence finished

Question word + verb + causer place Sino ang ipinadala ng eskuwelahan sa paligsahan? Who did the school send to the contest?

Question word + causer + verb + object Kailan mo pinaputulan ang buhok mo? When did you have a haircut?

#### Example sentences:

- 1. Pinalakihan ni Ely ang kanyang kusina Ely had her kitchen made bigger
- 2. Pasasamahan kita kay Manny I'll ask Manny to accompany you
- 3. Pinatawagan niya sa akin si Citta He/she had me call Citta
- 4. Ipatutulak namin sa mga lalaki ang malaking mesa We'll have the men push the big table
- 5. Ipinasara ng Ate ang mga bintana kay Al Ate had the windows closed by Al

### Exercise 10

Choose the appropriate causative verb form from the brackets, then translate the sentence:

- 1. Bukas, (ipinalagay, ipalalagay, ipinalalagay) ko kay Sarah ang mga halaman sa paso. (future)
- 2. Kailangan bang (ipapasok, ipasok, ipinasok) na ngayon ang mga damit sa sampayan? (infinitive)
- 3. Kailan natin (ipamimigay, ipamigay, ipinamimigay) ang mga lumang damit?' (future)
- 4. Noong isang taon (ipinaayos, ipaaayos, ipinaayos) ni Binibining Zapanta ang kaniyang bahay. (past)
- 5. Ayaw nilang (papintahan, pinapintahan, papipintahan) ang kanilang bahay. (infinitive)

#### **One-minute phrases**

Hindi na bale (heen-dee nah bah-leh) Meaning 'It doesn't matter/never mind'. For example: Hindi na bale kung hindi sila dumating sa miting, It doesn't matter if they don't/didn't arrive at the meeting.

Pang-araw-araw (pahng ah-rao ah-rao) Meaning 'For daily use'. For example: Pang-araw-araw ko ang lumang jeans na ito, I wear this old pair of jeans daily.

Tamang-tama lang (tah-mahng tah-mah lahng) Literally, just enough only. Meaning something fits perfectly (like a glove). For example: Tamang-tama lang sa iyo ang bagong sapatos mo, Your new pair of shoes fit you perfectly well.

Mahirap na lang magsalita (mah-hee-rahp nah lahng mahg-sah-lee-tah) Literally, (it's) difficuly already just to speak/talk. This is a common Tagalog phrase used to suggest that it may be difficult or inappropriate to offer comment. For example: Mahirap na lang magsalita pero kailangang pagsabihan mo ang anak mo, It's rather difficult to make any comments but you should talk to your child.

Gawan ng paraan (gah-wahn nahng pah-rah-ahn) Similar in meaning to the English expression 'I'll do anything I can to make sure it works'. For example: Gagawan ko ng paraan upang makabili ka ng uniporme mo, I'll do everything I can to make sure you can buy your uniform.

#### Cultural tip

The barrio or barangay is the traditional Filipino village or settlement and lies at the very heart of the cultural, political and religious life of the Philippines. A quick glance around almost every barrio will reveal the existence of a small chapel and a meeting hall. There is a strong sense of 'togetherness' (pakikisama) among barrio folk. The people draw much of their identity from this sense of 'togetherness'. This attitude becomes a pattern of living wherever the Filipino finds him/herself.



# In this unit you will learn how to

- make comparisons
- express embarrassment
- do last-minute shopping
- say your last goodbyes

# Expressing embarrassment

# Dialogue 1

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook have enjoyed their stay with Kiko and his family in the barrio. They are preparing to leave.

Roy Tingnan ninyo! Binigyan ako ni Kiko ng regalo. Louise Anong ibinigay niya sa iyo? Gaano kalaki?

Roy Isang kalabaw na inukit sa kahoy. Huwag kayong mag-

alala. Hindi ito mas malaki sa maleta ko.

Bill Napakaganda nito. Mahiya ka naman. Wala tayong ibinigay na pasalubong sa kanila kundi mga pagkain lang. Malaking abala rin ang naibigay natin sa kanila.

Louise Nakakahiya naman. Nagpasalamat ka ba?

Roy Opo. Nahihiya nga ako nang ibigay niya ito sa akin pero magdaramdam daw sila kapag hindi ko tinanggap ang

regalo.

Bill Ganoon ba?

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary
binigyan	was given
abala	disturbance
ibinigay	handed/gave
gaano kalaki	how big
huwag	don't
mag-alala	worry
hindi mas malaki	not as big as
ng maleta ko	of my suitcase
magdaramdam	will feel bad
Inukit	carved
kahoy	wood / wooden
napakaganda	how beautiful
mahiya ka naman	are you without shame, don't you feel a little
	ashamed?
ibinigay	gave
nakakahiya	embarrassing
nagpasalamat	gave thanks
nang ibigay	when (it) was given
kundi	instead
tinanggap	received

#### Translation

Roy Look! Kiko gave me a (parting) gift.

Louise What did he give you? How big is it?

Roy A wooden carving of a water buffalo. Don't worry. It's

not too big for my suitcase.

It's really beautiful. Don't you feel a little ashamed? We didn't bring any gifts for them other than a little

foodstuff. We were a bit of a disturbance to them, too.

Louise Shame on you. Did you at least thank them?

Roy Yes, I did. Actually I was embarrassed when (the gift) was

handed to me but (he) said he'd feel bad if I declined it.

III Is that so?

# Exercise 1

Answer the following questions in complete Tagalog sentences:

1. Ano ang regalo ni Kiko sa pamilya Cook?

2. Ano ang mangyayari kapag hindi tinanggap ni Roy ang regalo?

3. Anong uri ng regalo ang ibinigay ng mga Cook kina Kiko?

4. Bakit nag-alala ang mga Cook?

# Language skills

#### 1. Kasing/sing As... as

'As old as the hills', 'as white as snow', 'as sweet as honey', 'as strong as an ox'. These short sentences are examples of comparatives, expressed in English by means of an as... as construction. Tagalog expresses comparatives by the prefix (ka)sing before the root of a ma-adjective. The actor is expressed by a ng phrase (ni, nina, ko, mo, niya, namin, natin, nila etc.) and the complement (to which the comparison is being made) is in the ang form (namely si, sina, ako, ka, siya, kami, tayo, kayo, sila etc.). For example: Kasinghaba/singhaba ng kalye namin ang kalye ninyo, Your street is as long as our street. Kasinlaki ng Pilipinas ang Inglaterra, England is as big as the Philippines. Some speakers use kasing only and other speakers use both sing and kasing interchangeably in ordinary conversation. Both are correct.

It is worth remembering that certain adjectives can stand alone and are known as unaffixed adjectives. Any unaffixed adjective that corresponds to a noun (i.e. tulog (noun) sleep, tulog (adjective) asleep) do not occur with (ka)sing; whereas most other unaffixed adjectives (i.e. pula, red, tanga, dumb) do occur with (ka)sing. Here are some examples of the (ka)sing construction: (Ka)singtangkad ni Samantha si Sally, Sally is as tall as Samantha. Kasingyaman ni Ginoong Ramos si Ginoong Cruz. Mr Cruz is as rich as Mr Ramos. The prefix (ka)sing changes to (ka)sim when the preceding adjective root begins with b and p. However, when (ka)sing is followed by an adjective beginning with the letters d or t, then it becomes kasin. For example: (ka)singbait to kasimbait, as kind as; (ka)singpula to

(ka)simpula, as red as; (ka)singdami, as many as; to (ka)sindami, (ka)singtamad to (ka)sintamad and so on.

Comparison of inequality is expressed in English by simply using the negative of the 'as... as' formula. For example: Bobby is not as noisy as Fred. This is not as sweet as that (one). In Tagalog, the same basic rules used in comparison of equality apply to comparison of inequality. For example: Hindi kasingganda ng sampagita ang gumamela, (The) gumamela (flower) is not as beautiful as sampagita. Hindi kasinsariwa nito iyan, That is not as fresh as this (one).

It is also possible to verbalise both the comparison of equality and the comparison of inequality through the simple addition of the prefix mag. If this happens, then the prefix mag is understood to mean 'equally' or 'equal in'. For example: mag + (ka)sing. The resulting formation expresses a quality shared equally by exactly two people, things, places, etc. For example: Mag(ka)singtalino sina Jonathan at Manny, Jonathan and Manny are equal in intelligence. Magkasintaas si Joe at si Anne, Anne and Joe are equally tall. Look at the example sentences that follow. Practice reading them aloud in order to familiarise yourself with the word order.

#### Example sentences:

- 1. Kasimbango ng rosal ang camia (The) camia (flower) is as fragrant as rosal
- 2. Kasimbaho ng bagoong ang tuyong isda Dried fish is as smelly as fish sauce
- 3. Kasinlinis ng mesa ang silya The chair is as clean as the table
- 4. Magkasintangkad sina Erwin at Ardin Erwin and Ardin are equally tall
- 5. Magkasinlayo ang Australia at New Zealand buhat sa Inglaterra Australia and New Zealand are equally far from England
- 6. Hindi magkasinlapit ang Maynila at Makati buhat sa Paliparang Ninoy Aquino Manila and Makati are not equally close to Ninoy Aquino

airport

# Exercise 2

Look at the following adjectives together with their (ka)sing prefixes. Build a Tagalog sentence around each adjective ((ka)sing + adjective) and then translate into English.

Example: (ka)sintanda: as old as

Kasintanda ni Joanna si Amy Amy is as old as Joanna

- 1. (ka) simbait: as kind as
- 2. (ka) simputi: as white as
- 3. (ka) sintaas: as high as (as tall as)
- 4. (ka) sinluwang: as wide as
- 5. (ka) singkipot: as narrow as
- 6. hindi (ka) singganda: not as pretty as
- 7. mag(ka)simbuti: equally good

# Doing last minute shopping

# Dialogue 2

Bill, Louise and Roy Cook have to do some last minute shopping for their pasalubong (gifts).

Louise Kailangan kong bumili pa ng mga pampasalubong. Alam kong nakabili na ako noon pero may nakalimutan vata ako.

Bill Naiintindihan ko. Heto na ang Priscilla's Gift Shop. Kung mga pamigay lang ang bibilhin natin, napakarami nating mapagpipilian dito.

Roy O, sige gusto ko ring humanap ng laruang jeepney. Ibibigay ko ito kay Stewart.

Louise Aba, maganda ito – kawayang tumutunog sa hangin para kina Viv at Tim. Ito namang mga nilalang handbag ay pangshopping nina Consuelo at Clarita.

Bill Marami yata tayong pamimilihin kaya credit card na lang ang ipambayad natin sa halip na cash.

Louise Sang-ayon ako.

Roy Kung gayon bibili ako ng barong Tagalog na pangokasyon ko.

Bill Ako rin!

Louise Kayo lang ba? Bibili ako ng ternong saya na yari sa jusi. Wala akong ganitong uri ng terno.

Bill Sige, walang problema. Dalian lang natin ang pamimili

kasi mag-iimpake pa tayo.

Roy Oo nga pala!

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
tumutunog	making a musical sound	
nakabili	was able to buy	
noon	then/before	
may nakalimutan	forgot something	
naiintindihan	understand	
pamimilihin	things to buy	
kaya	that's why	
pamigay	to give around	
sa halip na	instead of	
bibilhin	will buy	
napakarami	so many	
mapagpipilian	to choose from	
pang-okasyon	for certain occasions	
humanap	to find	
ibibigay	will be given	
yari sa	made of	
daliin	be quick	
terno	evening gown	
nilala(ng)	woven	
pangshopping	for shopping	
ipambayad	to pay with	
sang-ayon	agree	
kung gayon	if that is so	
oo nga pala	oh that reminds me	
mag-iimpake	will get packing	
ternong saya	a lady's terno	
pamimili	shopping	
ganito(ng) uri	this kind	
jusi	pineapple fibre cloth	

#### Translation

Louise I need to buy some more gifts to give away. I know that I've already bought (some), but I think I've forgotten a few things.

Bill I understand. Look, here's Priscilla's Gift Shop. If we want to buy a few things to hand out, (then) there's an enormous choice here.

Roy All right. I also want to look for a toy Jeepney. I'm giving it to my friend Stewart.

**Louise** This is nice – a bamboo wind chime for Viv and Tim. These woven handbags are for Consuelo and Clarita.

Bill I think we'll be buying a lot of things so why don't we pay by credit card instead of cash.

Louise That's a good idea.

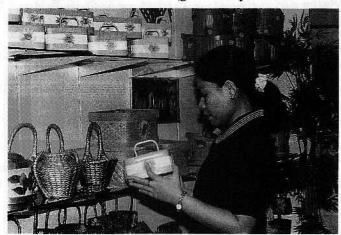
Roy In that case, then I'm going to buy myself a barong Tagalog to wear on special occasions.

Bill I will too.

Louise And you think it's only for you (two). I think I'll buy a long evening gown made of jusi for myself. I haven't got anything like this yet.

Bill OK. That's not a problem, but we'll have to hurry up with our shopping because we still have the rest of the packing to do.

**Roy** Oh, that reminds me... (good that you reminded me)



### Exercise 3

Mga tanong: Sagutin sa Tagalog na pangungusap. Answer in Tagalog sentences. Use the glossary to help you.

1. Ano ang kailangang gawin ni Louise?

2. Saan sila pumunta upang mamili ng pampasalubong?

3. Para kanino ang tumutunog na hangin?

4. Ano ang maaaring ibigay ni Louise kina Consuelo?

5. Sabihin kung paano sila magbabayad ng kanilang pinamili.

6. Bakit kailangan nilang magmadali?

# M Language skills

#### 2. Making nouns pang

By now you will have begun to grasp something of the versatility of the Tagalog language. One further 'trick' Tagalog has up its sleeve is the ability to form nouns from verbs, simply by adding the prefix pang to the verb root. For example ligo, lakad, tulog, pasok, pasyal etc. can be made into nouns meaning 'used for' simply by adding the prefix pang: pang + ligo = panligo, 'used for bathing', pang + lakad = panlakad, 'used for going out'. You will notice that words that begin with 1, d and t turn the pang into pan, for example pang + tulog = pantulog; while words beginning with p makes pang into pam. Example: pang + pasok = pampasok + tulog = pantulog 'used for going to sleep', pang + pasok = pampasok, 'used for going to work or school', pang + pasyal = pamasyal, 'used to go out in'. Look at these example sentences: Pantulog ba ang damit na iyan?, Is that clothing used for sleeping in?. Pamputol ng kahoy ito, This is for cutting firewood with. May pandagdag ka ba sa pera ko?, Do you have anything to add to my money?

By adding the letter i to the pang prefix, the resulting word is transformed back into a verb, but it is different in meaning from the original verb. The new verb then carries the meaning 'to use for' and is consequently known as an instrumental verb. Here are some examples: I + pang + laba, 'wash clothes' = ipanlaba, 'to use for washing clothes'. Ipanlaba natin ang sabong ito sa blusa mo,

Let's use this soap to wash your blouse with. I + pang + tali 'string' = ipantali. Ipinantali ni Divin ang lubid sa malaking kahon, Divin used the string/rope to tie around the big box.

Changing the tense of an ipang verb:

ipang + linis clean =	ipanlinis	to clean with	infinitive
ipan+li+linis =	ipanlilinis	will clean with	future
ip+inan+li+linis =	ipinanlilinis	cleaning with	present
ip+inan+linis =	ipinanlinis	used to clean with	past

Some commonly used nominalised words:

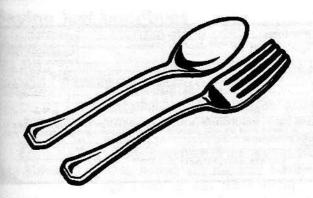
- 1. pantulak = to push with
- 2. pangkain = to eat with
- 3. pantulog = to sleep with
- 4. panlakad = to walk with
- 5. panlaro = to play with
- 6. pananggalang = for protection
- 7. panlaban = to fight against with
- 8. panulat = a writing instrument
- 9. panigarilyo = money to buy cigarettes with
- 10. panlasa = taste

# Exercise 4

Here are some everyday things we might see around the house. What are they used for? Use the glossary to help you to find the correct **pang** noun for each:







#### Exercise 5

Give the Tagalog 'pang' nouns for the following (the italicised word will give you a clue).

Example: a hammer to *break* with Answer: *pandurog* 

- 1. a scratcher
- 2. something you cut with
- 3. to wash clothes with
- 4. to write with
- 5. to use to go strolling in

# Exercise 6

Having found the correct **pang** words for Exercise 5, can you make a sentence out of them?

Example: Pambiyak ng niyog ang malaking kutsilyo, The big knife is for cutting the coconut with

14.5			14	
	(8)	-		

4.

5. \_\_\_\_\_



BOARU	(C)(-0.7)	BC BC	
MANGULAD/	CEL A	MANGULAD	CEL A
		DVO	eto
MNL	034	MNL	034
PR 812	Y D3JAN	PR 812	Y 03JA
3E	21H		<b>1</b> 21H.€
Philloo	ine Airlines		ippine Airline





# Saying last goodbyes

# Dialogue 3

The Cook family are saying goodbye to the Abiva family at the airport.

Bill Maraming, maraming salamat sa pagtanggap

ninyo sa amin. Pasensiya na kayo sa nagawa naming pang-aabala sa inyong tahanan at sa

inyong katahimikan lalo na kay Jobert.

Tita Abiva Aba, huwag kayong mag-alaala. Nasisiyahan

nga kami at dito kayo tumigil. Higit sana kayong magpasensiya sa aming pagkukulang.

Mas lalo kaming humihingi ng pasensiya.

Louise Lubusan kaming nasiyahan at sana ay huwag

kayong madadala sa amin. Nagbigay kami sa

inyo ng kaguluhan.

Tita Kami nga ang mas nag-aalala na baka hindi

kayo nakatulog nang mabuti. Alam kong mas tahimik sa Inglatera kaysa dito. O, tinatawag na

vata ang flight ninyo.

Mr Abiya Huwag kayong mag-aatubiling bumalik sa

amin sa susunod ninyong pagbabakasyon.

Sumulat lang kayo.

Bill Gagawin namin iyon. Pasensiya na kayo sa

aming munting regalong ito.

Tita Aba, nag-abala pa kayo. Maraming salamat.

Isang napakagandang kuwadro para sa larawan

ng aking pamilya!

Mr Abiva Kay ganda! O, sige maraming salamat na muli.

Jobert Susulat kayong lagi at kung maaari tumawag

kavo sa akin.

Roy Maraming salamat po sa inyo Ginoo at Ginang

Abiva, nag-enjoy ako dito at maraming salamat

Jobert, okey ka talaga.

Jobert Huwag kang mag-alala, Roy. Katulad mo, nag-

enjoy ako.

Louise and Bill Maraming salamat. Aalis na kami.

Tita Walang anuman. O sige. Paalam.

(The Cooks and the Abivas kiss)

Talasalitaan	Vocabulary	
pagtanggap	receiving	
pasensiya na	accept our apologies	
nagawa	what's been done	
pang-aabala	disturbance	
tahanan	home	
katahimikan	peace	
lalo na kay	especially	
sa susunod	next time	
pagbabakasyon	vacationing	
nasisiyahan	pleased	
tumigil	stopped	
higit	more	
magpasensiya	to accept our	
pagkukulang	shortcomings	
mas lalo	more	
humihingi	asking	
lubusan	earnestly	
kay ganda	how pretty	
huwag	don't	
madadala	be turned off	
nagbigay	gave	
kaguluhan	chaos	
mas nag-aalala	more bothered	
baka hindi	might not	
nakatulog	managed to sleep	
mag-aalaala	be worried	
paalam	goodbye	
tahimik	quiet	
kaysa	than	
tinatawag	calling	
mag-aatubili(ng)	hestitate	
bumalik	return	
munti(ng) regalo	small gift	
nag-abala	bothered	
napakaganda(ng)	very pretty	
kuwadro	frame	
larawan ng	picture of	
muli	again	
\ <del></del>	will write	
susulat		
lagi	always	
kung maaari	if possible	
tumawag	call	
nag-enjoy	enjoyed	
nang mabuti	soundly	
alam mo ba	do you know	

tio
r

Bill

Bill	Thank you so much for letting us stay. We
A MANAGE	apologise if we have been an intrusion in your
	home and to your peace, especially Jobert's.

Tita Abiva	Please don't worry. In fact we were very pleased that you stayed with us. We hope you have been
	able to bear with our shortcomings. We're the
	ones who have to apologise.

Louise	We are really happy and hope that we didn't put
Louise	
	you off coming again. We must have caused you
	a lot of inconvenience.

Y.	
Tita Abiva	In fact, we're more worried that you might not
	have been able to sleep properly. I know that it's
	much quieter in England than it is here. Listen,
	I think they are calling your flight number.

Mr Abiva	Please don't hesitate to come back to our home											
	the next time you come for your holidays.											

ricase wille.	
We most certainly	will. Please accept our small

	(parting) gitt.	
Tita	You should not have bothered.	Thank you so

much.	What	a	lovely	frame	for	my	family's
nichtro							141

picture.

How beautiful! OK, thank you so much again. Mr Abiva Please write regularly and if possible, give me a Jobert

call.

Thank you so much, Mr. & Mrs Abiva. I Roy enjoyed myself here and thank you very much

Jobert, you're really ok!

Don't worry Roy. I enjoyed it as much as you **Jobert** 

did.

Thank you so much. We've got to go now. Louise and Bill

Don't mention it. OK. Goodbye. Tita (The Cooks and the Abivas kiss)

# Exercise 7

Bigyan ng tamang sagot:

- 1. Nang humingi ng paumanhin si Bill, ano ang sagot ni Tita Abiva?
- 2. Bakit nag-aalala si Tita Abiva na hindi nakatulog ang mag-anak?
- 3. Anong regalo ang tinanggap ni Tita Abiva buhat sa mag-anak?
- 4. Ano ang hiniling ni Jobert kay Roy?

# Exercise 8



The Cook family don't want to miss their flight back to London and so are carefully monitoring the flight announcements. Listen carefully to the announcements on the tape and write down the correct flight numbers and departure times. What are the correct gate numbers for each flight? Are there any delays?

Ninoy Aquino	Internation	al Airpor	t Manila 🔝	Departu	res board
Destination	Flight No.	Arrivals	Departures	Delays	Gate No.
Hong Kong	THE THEFT		arama Mê	- 300	- 14
Singapore		15	PERENTAL PROPERTY.		
Los Angeles	arturi v	Lot My	19 along		
Sydney			_maxrfras		N S
Tokyo					
London		11-	i i lur		
Dubai	10				10
Kualar Lumpur	B: 11				

# **Language** skills

#### 3. Mas, lalong, kaysa sa

Richard is tall, Justin is taller, but Chris is the tallest. You will notice from this example that there are three levels or degrees of

comparison in English adjectives: tall, taller, tallest. These different levels are known as the positive, comparative and superlative degrees. Take for example the adjective good. The word good is in its positive degree. When comparing two adjectives, the adjective 'good' (positive degree) becomes the word 'better' in the comparative degree, and finally 'best' in the superlative degree. In Tagalog, mas, lalong or kaysa + the sa form are used in the comparative degree, while in the superlative degree, the prefix pinaka is used. Look at the examples that follow:

 $\begin{array}{lll} \text{malaki} & \textit{big} = & \text{positive degree} \\ \text{mas/lalong malaki kaysa sa} & \textit{bigger} = & \text{comparative degree} \\ \text{pinakamalaki} & \textit{biggest} = & \text{superlative degree} \end{array}$ 

Mas malaki ang problema ni John kaysa kay Tony John's problem is bigger than Tony's

maliit	small =	positive degree
higit na maliit	smaller =	comparative degree
pinakamaliit	smallest =	superlative degree

Pinakamaliit si Louella sa magkakapatid Louella is the smallest among the siblings

#### Further examples:

- 1. Higit na malaki ang sombrero ko kaysa sa sombrero mo My hat is bigger than your hat
- 2. Mas mahaba ang nilakad namin kaysa sa nilakad ninyo Our walk was longer that your walk
- 3. Maganda ang hardin mo pero mas maganda ang hardin ni Patricia Your garden is pretty but Patricia's garden is prettier
- 4. Higit na malayo ang Pilipinas kaysa sa India buhat sa Inglaterra The Philippines is farther than India from England
- 5. Masarap ang luto mo pero mas masarap ang luto ko kaysa sa luto mo

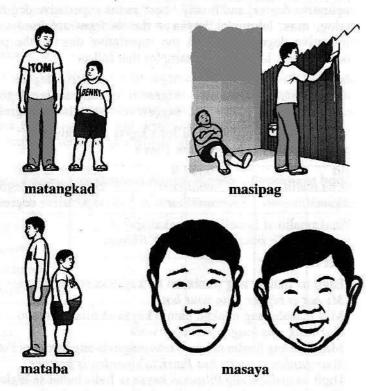
Your cooking is good but my cooking is better than yours

### 4

#### Exercise 9

Look at the pictures and use the adjectives provided to produce a statement about each picture using the comparative degree:

Tom is taller than Benny



# W

#### Exercise 10

Pretend that you are Bill or Louise Cook and have just returned from your wonderful holiday in the Philippines. Write to your friends the Abivas to thank the family for their kindness. This is your chance to impress by them writing your thank you letter in Tagalog. Don't forget to use polite words and as many different types of Tagalog verbs as you can remember. Close your letter by inviting them to England to stay with you!

#### **One-minute phrases**

Alis d'yan (ah-lees jahn) Literally, alis means leave and d'yan/diyan, there, hence: go away from there or, more colloquially, get lost!!!, beat it!!!

Buwena mano (bwehnah mah-naw) Literally, buwena means good from the Spanish word buena and mano, hand. It is believed that the first shopper cannot be turned down by the storekeeper as he/she will bring luck for the rest of the day.

Labas-masok (lah-bahs mah-sawk) Literally, labas means out/outside and masok or pasok means enter. A person who comes and goes. Labas-masok ang mga tao sa opisina ng meyor, The people come and go into the mayor's office.

Walang tawad (wah-lahng tah-wahd) Literally, no discount, no bargain/last price. This is usually what vendors say to you when you start to haggle in the markets. You can still try to ask for a discount but they usually get annoyed if you insist. If the price can be haggled they usually encourage you otherwise.

Hindi kasya (heen-dee kahs-yah) Meaning it doesn't fit. An expression commonly used when you are trying something on. Hindi kasya sa akin ang sombrero mo kasi maliit ito sa akin, Your hat doesn't fit me because it's too small for me.



#### **Cultural** tip

The high value Filipinos place on harmonious relationships may at first seem rather quaint to the visiting westerner. This is hardly surprising when on closer inspection, the westerner tends to value having 'a mind of his/her own' and a strong sense of autonomy. Filipino social behaviour on the other hand is expected to promote the sense of community and togetherness (pakikisama). One of the principal means of ensuring socially acceptable behaviour is through hiya or 'shame'. Filipinos report the experience of feeling 'ashamed' (mahiya) when they receive negative feedback from others through their body

language, voice tone or verbal messages. Hiva is therefore a key form of social control, determining how people feel about themselves (self-esteem) as well as their social standing. A person with a strong sense of his or her own hiva learns how to negotiate a way through potentially sensitive or embarrassing situations. Compromise is always a key factor, ensuring that others involved do not lose face and feel mahiya. The Filipino will avoid at all costs making another person feel mahiya. To do so not only damages that person's social standing but also gains them a potential enemy. It is extremely important for the foreigner to understand this. The golden rule is very simple: Never put anyone to shame in public, even in a joking way. Others may laugh, but only out of politeness. Filipinos often laugh and smile in order to cover their sense of discomfort or embarrassment. If you have a problem with someone, look for an appropriate time and place to speak to the person alone and in private. Even if you are upset, always make sure you speak in a low voice. Be prepared to compromise in order to help the other person save face and minimise their sense of hiva, even if they are clearly in the wrong. This will always act in your favour, indicating to others a sensitivity on your part to the intricacies of the Filipino social relationship system. If you are ever in doubt, smile, keep your mouth shut and ask your Filipino friends for advice.

# KEY TO THE EXERCISES

#### Unit 1

Exercise 2 1. siya 2. kami 3. ako 4. ka 5. sila 6. kayo 7. tayo 8. kayo 9. sila 10. siya. Exercise 3 1. hapon 2. umaga 3. tanghali 4. gabi Exercise 4 1. umaga 2. gabi 3. tanghali 4. hapon Exercise 5 a3, b6, c4, d1, e5, f4 Exercise 6 a. kayo b. ka c. ka d. ka

#### Unit 2

Exercise 1 May tuwalya ba kayo? May sabon ba kayo? May telepono ba kayo? May menu ba kayo? May telebisyon ba kayo? Exercise 3

1. Doktor sila 2. Turista ako 3. Matatangkad/ matangkad sila 4. Maganda siya 5. Amerikano ka/kayo Exercise 5

1. May payong ba kayo? May payong ka ba? Oo. Mayroon 2. May sasakyan ba? Oo. Mayroon 3. May pinggan ba sa mesa? Oo. Mayroon 4. May kutsilyo ba? Oo. Mayroon 5. May baso ba kayo? Oo. Mayroon Exercise 6

1. May libro 2. May barko 3. May mesa 4. Walang pera 5. May basura 6. May sombrero 7. Wala (ng) pasahero 8. May sanggol Exercise 7

1. Sino ang pagod? 2. Sino ang Reyna? 3. Anong oras na? 4. Anong kulay ng bandila?

#### Unit 3

Exercise 1 a. Maga		yong lahat b. Ito ang lola ko c.
Ito ang tatay ko,	d. At si	, ang kapatid ko e. Ito ang
lolo ko f. Ito si	, ang kapatid	ko g. at katapusan, ang nanay ko
Exercise 2 a. Tatay	b. Hipag c. Lola	at Lolo d. pamangkin e. Nanay
		. mapa 2. payong 3. posporo
4. shampoo Exercise	4 1. Kailangan	ko ng tee-shirt 2. Gusto kong
		kayo? 4. Nagtitinda ba kayo ng
		anahon 2. Marumi ang kalye 3.
Malinis ang kotse 4. N	Maganda ang bahay	y 5. Doktor ang lalaki

Exercise 6 a. Maraming salamat b. Maraming salamat po or Maraming salamat sa inyo c. Maraming Salamat or Salamat d. Maraming salamat po or Maraming salamat sa inyo e. Maraming salamat Exercise 7 1. Hindi ito barko 2. Hindi malinis ang mesa 3. Hindi estudyante si Amy 4. Hindi tumatakbo ang Jeepney. Exercise 8 1. Wala. Walang sasakyan sa bus stop 2. Wala. Wala kaming yelo. 3 Wala. Walang katulong si Ginoong Reyes.

#### Unit 4

Exercise 1 1. kumaliwa 2. kumanan 3. diretso 4. kanan 5. tumawid kayo 6. kaliwa Exercise 3 1. Nasaan ang simbahan? Reply: Nasa Sto. Domingo ang simbahan 2. Nasaan ang Jeepney stop? Reply: Nasa Guzman Street ang paradahan ng Jeepney. 3. Nasaan ang palengke? Reply: Nasa Cubao ang palengke 4. Nasaan ang bangko? Reply: Nasa Makati ang bangko **Exercise 4** 1. Gusto kong bumili ng selvo para sa pakete ko 2. Gusto kong bumili ng selyo papunta sa Amerika 3. Magkakano ang Air Letter? 4. Nasaan ang timbangan? 5. Pakitimbang mo nga ang pakete ko or Maaari bang timbangin mo ang pakete ko? Exercise 6 Listening: kahon, bolpen, sulat, selvo, pakete, timbangan Exercise 7 1. bata, payat, puti ang blusa, mahabang itim na buhok. nakasalamin, nakapantalon 2. babaeng hindi masyadong matanda, itim ang palda at jacket, itim ang sapatos at handbag 3. matabang babae, pandak, hindi itim ang blusa, itim ang palda, nakarelos at singsing 4. Matandang babae, putting buhok, mahabang itim na bestida, nakakuwintas Exercise 8 1. Malaking masipag na hayop 2. magandang matalinong dalagita 3. malaking puting simbahan 4. makulay na mabilis na Jeepney.

#### Unit 5

Exercise 1 1. Disinuwebe 2. Animnapu't apat 3. Nubenta y nuwebe 4. Dalawampu't pito 5. siyento kinse 6. apat na raan at walumpu Exercise 3 1. Labinlimang piso 2. Sampung piso 3. Pitumpung piso 4. Isandaang piso 5. Isanlibong piso; total = 1195 (isanlibo isandaa't siyamnapu't lima) Exercise 4 1. Alas dose beinte 2. Menos kinse para alas tres 3. Alas siyete 4 Ala-una diyes 5. alas kuwatro medya 6. Alas sais Exercise 5 Examples: Magkakano ang mangga, magkano ang lanzones? Magkano ang bayabas? Exercise 6 1. True 2. True 3. True

4. False 5. True **Exercise 7** Gusto kong magpapalit ng dolyar 2. Magkano ang palit? 3. Ang palit ay 40 pesos 4. Nagpapalit din ba kayo ng Australian dollars? **Exercise 8** 1. Limandaan 2. mil singko sientos

#### Unit 6

Exercise 2 1. Saan sila nakatira 2. Saan kayo matutulog 3. Saan nagaaral sina Lucy? 4. Saan po kayo bumibili ng sorbetes? 5. Saan kakain ng almusal si Adam? Exercise 3 1. ka 2. bahay 3. mapa 4. Nakikita 5. kasama Exercise 4 1. Hindi. Masyadong malapit ito 2. Sa Sikatuna Village 3. Sa Kalye Roxas 4. Walang kasama si Roy 5. Nasa Kalye Vito ito. Exercise 5 Magbabakasyon, masyadong mainit, masyadong malayo, buhat sa, masyadong mataas. Kapitan ng eroplano, ang dating Exercise 6 1. Dadaan ba ito sa Sikatuna Village? 2. sa Kalye Maningning 3. Magkano + Sikatuna? Heto ang bayad. May sukli ka ba?

#### Unit 7

Exercise 1 1. Nasa likuran 2. Nasa harapan 3. Nasa harapan katabi ni Toto 4. Nasa likuran 5. Nasa harapan 6)Nasa harapan katabi ni Tita Exercise 2 Kaibigan ko si Margaret 2. Kapatid niya siya John 3. Bisita nila si Ann 4. Kaklase ko sila. Exercise 4 1. ng 2. namin 3. ni 4. ng 5. ko 6. ng 7. niya. Exercise 5 1. Bahay ni Pedro ito 2. Pagkain ng aso ito. 3. Kampana ng simbahan ito. Exercise 6 1. kaibigan 2. Matangkad 3. magkakapatid 4. pinakamatanda 5. pinakabunso 6. anak ninyo 7. anak ko. 8. ilan 9. ang may-asawa. Ang anak niya. 10. apo Exercise 7 1.d 2.e 3.b 4.a 5.c Exercise 8 1. ang piknik natin 2. mas matanda sa dalawa 3. tatlong taon 4. mas bata 5. hindi mo ba alam 6. kapatid siya ng aking nanay 7. ng malamig na inumin 8. ang piknik na ito Exercise 9 1. Siya ay anak mo 2. Ako ay may tiket 3. Ang tubig ay malamig 4. Ngayon ay mainit 5. Ang handa mo ay masarap.

#### Unit 8

Exercise 1 1. Apat kami. 2. May mesa ba kayo para sa apat (na tao)?
3. Gusto ko ng malamig na tubig. 4. Gusto ko ng San Miguel beer.
5. May malaking mesa ba kayo? Exercise 2 1. False 2. True 3. True
4. False 5. False 6. True Exercise 3 1. mga aklat 2. mga babae 3. mga bahay Exercise 4 1. May mga bisita na sa bahay 2. Mga estudyante ba

kayo? 3. Hindi sila mga Pilipino

4. Kailangan ko ang mga silya at mesa. 5. Mga sariwang prutas ang mga ito **Exercise 5** 1. Oo. Suka nga para sa bangus 2. Oo. Maaari bang bigyan mo ako ng asin? 3. Gusto ko ng sarsa 4. May toyo ba kayo? **Exercise 6** 1. mga dalawang kilong 2. mga tatlong yarda. 3. Mga alasdos 4. Mga siyam 5. mga walong tao **Exercise 7** Customer 1. adobong manok sa gata, kanin at malamig na guyabano 2. pansit, guinataan, malamig na buko juice 3. lechon, kanin, pansit at malamig na Coke.

#### Unit 9

Exercise 1 1.f 2.d 3.e 4.a 5.c 6.b Exercise 2 1. Para sa kape ang gatas 2. Para sa bintana ang kurtina 3. Para sa sulat 4. Para sa ulan 5. Para sa pagtulog ang kama 6. Para sa biyahe ang maleta 7. Para sa tubig. Exercise 3 1. Magandang umaga 2. ngipin ko 3. gamot 4 Okey lang. Maraming salamat 5. Magkano iyan 6. ang bayad 7. Walang anuman Exercise 4 1. buhok 2. ulo 3. mata 4. panga 5. tiyan 6. kamay 7. daliri 8. binti 9. paa 10. talampakan Exercise 5 Tama. 2. Mali. Nasa harapan ang dibdib. 3. Tama. 4. Mali. Nasa paa ang talampakan. 5. Mali. Nasa bibig ang labi. 6. Tama Exercise 6 1. Ang sakit ng ulo ko. 2. Hatsing! May sipon ako. 3. Masakit ang paa ko.

#### Unit 10

Exercise 1 1.b 2.c 3.c 4.b Exercise 2 1. Sa akin ang maletang ito 2. sa bata ba ang bisikleta/3. Sa kanila ang bagong Jeepney 4. Hindi sa iyo iyan 5. Kay Beth ang tsinelas. 6. Kina Philip ba ito? Exercise 3 1. dilaw 2. puti 3. pula 4. asul 5. kulay pilak 6. biyoleta 7. itim 8. berde 9. ginto Exercise 4 1. Hindi. Kay Amy ang itim na tote bag 2. Hindi. Kay Paul ang itim na tote bag 3. Hindi. Kay Stephen ang duffel bag 4. Kay Dad ang denim tote bag 5. Oo. Kay Lucy ang dilaw na plastic bag. **Exercise 5** 1. Kanino ang mga iyon? 2. Kaninong bahay ito? 3. Kaninong guro si Cora? 4. Kanino iyan? 5. Kanino ang mga gulay na ito? 6. Kanino ang mga berdeng mangga? 7. Kanino ang maleta? 8. Kaninong anak si Joanna? 9. Kaninong maleta ito? 10. Kaninong kamera iyan? **Exercise 6** 1. bata, 2. beach, 3. turista, 4. bata, 5. turista, 6. beach, 7. bata, 8. turista, 9. beach, 10. bata, 11. beach, 12. turista, 13. bata, 14. beach, 15. bata, 16. turista, 17. beach, 18. turista **Exercise 7** 1, sa tindahan 2, sa paliparan 3, sa dagat 4, sa tindahan ng laruan 5. sa palengke 6. sa palaruan 7. sa kalye **Exercise 8** 1. sa hapon

2. Sa Linggo 3. sa gabi 4. sa tanghali 5. sa hapon 6. sa umaga 7. sa isang lingo

#### Unit 11

Exercise 2 1. gusto 2. kailangan 3. ayaw 4. dapat 5. ibig Exercise 3 1. Hindi masyadong mahaba 2. Hindi 3. Sa tabi 4. Huhugasan muna ng barbero ang buhok ni Bill 5. Gusto rin ni Bill ng masahe Exercise 4 1. ang bagong kotse 2. ng katulong 3. ng aking tulong 4. magpagupit 5. ng malamig na kape Exercise 5 1. Kailangan (Do you want a pencil?) 2. Ibig (Baby wants to buy some bananas from the market) 3. kailangan (Why do you need a blackboard?) 4. gusto Who do you want to go with you to the cinema? 5. Ibig (Do you like a cold Pepsi?) Exercise 6 1. Mahaba ang inyong buhok 2. Bagay sa inyo ang mahabang buhok 3. Kailangan kong hugasan ang inyong buhok. Exercise 7 1. Maikli sa harapan, medyo mahaba sa likuran 2. putulin nang kaunti ang tagiliran, medyo kulot, medyo kingki 3. pakiputulan ang hulihan, huwag masyadong maikli, hanggang batok lang. Exercise 8 1. Magandang umaga naman 2. gusto kong magpagupit 3. Maaari bang ngayon na ako magpagupit? 4. Hindi na salamat. Gupit lang 5. Gusto ko maikli ang gupit 6. Gupit na lang muna 7. Maraming salamat Exercise 9 1. sa matatanda 2. sa iyo 3. sa kaniya 4. sa akin 5. sa atin 6. sa kaniya

#### Unit 12

Exercise 1 1. kailangan 2. pantalon at kamisadentro 3. maluwag 4. sarisaring kulay 5. maganda 6. pumili 7. sombrero Exercise 2 1. bibili ako ng laruan bukas 2. Kumakain kami ng gulay araw-araw 3. Gumawa tayo ng laruan 4.) Humihiram si Ely ng libro sa akin 5. Iinom kami ng malamig na beer sa kantina ngayon. Exercise 4 1. gusto ko ng berdeng palda 2. Ayaw ko ng mahabang palda 3. Kailangan ko ito sa Lunes 4. Nasa bahay ang palda ko. Exercise 5 1. lumalaki 2. gumaganda 3. luminis 4. lumayo Exercise 6 lumalaki, lumiwanag, luminaw, sumarap Exercise 7 1. Kanina sumikat ang araw 2. sa amin noong isang linggo 3. tag-init 4. umuulan 5. Madilim ang langit. Exercise 8 1. Bumabaha sa Maynila. 2. Hindi. Sa Kanluran ito lumulubog 3. Sumisikat ang araw sa Pilipinas mga alas 6:00 nang umaga 4. May ingay kung kumukulog at kumikidlat 5. Hindi. Sumisikat ang buwan sa gabi. Exercise 9 Kumikidlat 2. umulan 3. bumaha

Exercise 10 1. maulap, maaaring umulan sa Hilagang Luzon 2. Mainit 3. Mainit ang araw

#### Unit 13

Exercise 1 1. False 2.True 3. False 4. True 5. True 6. False 7. False 8. True 9. True 10. False Exercise 2 1. Hindi ko gustong bumili ng tiket 2. Hindi puwede bukas nang umaga. 3. Hindi humihinto ang bus nang mga alas 7:30 4. Malayo ang Banaue buhat sa Maynila 5. Hindi mabuti ang alas 4.30 nang umaga, Exercise 3 1. Huwebes 2. Septyembre 3. Nobyembre 4. Linggo 6. Miyerkoles 6. Hunyo 7. Sabado Exercise 4 1. Sa ika-30 ng Agosto ang kaarawan niya 2. Sa Lunes ang simula ng pasukan 3. Dadalaw kami sa iyo sa Sabado, ikasampu ng Mayo. 4. Noong Martes, ika-14 ng Hunyo ang komperensiya 5. Pupunta kami sa zoo sa Linggo, ika-3 ng Septyembre 6. Sa Sabado ka ba aalis? 7. Sino ang darating sa Huwebes, ika 5 ng Enero? Exercise 5 1. magluto 2. maglaba 3. maglaro Exercise 6 1. Maglaro tavo 2. Naglinis na ako ng kotse 3. Naghuhugas ng pinggan si Maria 4. Magdasal tayo 5. Magluluto sina Lina. Exercise 7 1. Mga sampung oras 2. Hindi 3. Tarlac 4. Lima Exercise 8 1. Alas 7.45 ang dating ng bus galing sa Baguio. 2. Umalis ito sa Baguio kaninang alas 9.00 ng umaga. 3. Hihinto ito sa Ilocos, Pangasinan, Tarlac, Pampanga at Bulacan Exercise 9 1.81 pesos 2. Mali. Ang numero ng tiket ay: anim, dalawa, dalawa, tatlo, talo, anim 3. wala. 4. 10-60 5. Hindi. 6. Hindi Exercise 10 1. maligo 2. nakikinig 3. naupo 4. mahiga 5. natulog Exercise 11 1. Anong oras hihinto ang bus sa Pampanga? 2. Saan pa kayo hihinto? 3. Mayroon bang kubeta doon? 4. Gusto kong pumunta sa kubeta Exercise 12 1. Magandang umaga 2. Oo. Pero hindi ko sigurado kung anong oras ito babalik sa Maynila 3. Bukas nang hapon ang balik naming 4. Alas tres. Okay lang 5. Isang biyahe lang. Para sa tatlong adults 6. Heto ang bayad namin 7. Maraming salamat din. Exercise 13 1. nakapaglalaro

#### Unit 14

Exercise 1 1. Kasi maganda ang panahon 2. Mamamasyal muna 3. Mga mangingisda 4. Oo. Sa palagay ko, mura ang pag-arkila ng bangka 5. Hindi. Pagbalik na nila. Exercise 2 1. Mamimitas ako ng

2. makakaalis 3. makakabili 4. makakapagluto 5. nakatulog

prutas bukas 2. Mangingisda sila sa Miyerkoles 3. Maraming mandurukot sa palengke 4. Mamamasiyal ako mamayang gabi 5. Mamili tayo! Exercise 3 1. mamimitas 2. mangisda 3. namimili 4. nandurukot 5. nanahi Exercise 4 1.a 2.a 3.a Exercise 5 1. Malapit na ang pasko 2. Hindi pa ako nakakakain 3. Sa Sabado na ba ang binyag ng anak mo? 4. alam mo ba ang sagot sa tanong? 5. Kumakain pa ba sila? Exercise 6 1. Si Bill 2. Malalaking isda 3. Nakakapangisda sila 4. Oo. Nasiyahan sila 5. Lumangoy sila. Exercise 7 1. Namamangka ang pamilya Cook. 2. Lumalangoy ang pamilya Cook. Exercise 8 1. Nakabili 2. nakakapaglaro 3. nakahiram 4. nakakaalis 5. makabalik. Exercise 9 1. Makakapangisda 2. Makakabili 3. nakakain 4. nakabisita 5. Nakakain Exercise 10 1. Salamat. Nakapamahinga kami. Nakapangisda rin kami 2. Oo. Nakapangisda kami ng tulingan at dalawang Lapulapu 3. Oo! Sana makabalik kami sa susunod na taon at makahuli nang maraming isda 4. Heto ang bayad namin sa bangka 5. Maraming salamat din.

#### Unit 15

Exercise 1 1. Tinanong nila si Roy kung ibig niyang maging ninong. 2. Apat 3. Sa kapilya sa bukid 4. Oo 5. si Jobert. Exercise 2 1. Bukas ba ninyo bibilhin ang bagong stereo? 2. Ginagawa niya ang bulaklak na papel 3. Tinatahi mo ba ito? 4. Tinutugtog niya ang kundiman sa piyano 5. Nililinis ko pa ang kuwarto ko 6. Piliin mo ang sariwang gulay. Exercise 3 1. Maaari bang kunan kita ng retrato? 2. Maaari bang kunan mo ako ng retrato? 3. Gusto ko ang damit mo, maganda ito/ Ang ganda ng damit mo! 4. sumama ka sa amin. Exercise 4 1. iibigin, iniibig, inibig 2. kakainin, kinakain, kinain 3. lilinisin, nililinis, nilinis 4. susulatin, sinusulat, sinulat 5. tatapusin, tinatapos, tinapos Exercise 5 1. hinuhuli 2. kinain 3. tatahiin 4. sasabihin 5. nilinis Exercise 6 1. kinukuha, binili 2. nililinis, kinukuskos 3. niluluto, sinasaing Exercise 7 1. Ninong ka rin ba? 2. Ilan kayong ninong? 3. Narito ba ang mga magulang mo? 4. Pupunta ka ba sa salu-salo? Exercise 8 1.4 2.2 3.1 4.3 Exercise 9 1. pala 2. nga 3. kaya 4. vata 5. ba

#### Unit 16

**Exercise 1** 1. Maaari bang ipakihulog mo ang mga sulat ko? 2. Labindalawa 3. Sapagka't walang selyo si Louise 4. sa Post Office.

Exercise 2 1. ibinibigay 2. itinatapon 3. isinusukat Exercise 3 1. ibibigay 2. isasama 3. ipinirito 4. isinulat 5. iniluluto 6. inihulog 7. itatapon 8. inilagay Exercise 4 1. Kasi maraming naitulong si Jobert sa pamilya Cook 2. Dahil sa malaki ang itinulong ng pamilya kay Jobert sa London 3. Dinala nila si Jobert sa iba't ibang lugar, ibinili nila sa Jobert ng kailangan niva 4. Aba, oo. Exercise 5 1. Maraming bumibili ng libro dito araw-araw 2. May kumakatok yata sa pinto 3. May kinuha ako kahapon sa kaniya 4. Walang sumama sa akin sa ospital noong Linggo 5. May naglalaro na naman ng tennis sa kabila. Exercise 6 1. Tumayo ka! 2. Maupo po kayo. 3. Matulog na tayo. 4. Maari po bang huwag kayong manigarilyo? 5. Mamasiyal tayo. Exercise 7 1. Magandang umaga 2. May semento ba kayo 3. Puwede bang ipagreserba mo ako ng sampung sako? 4. May Marine plywood ba kayo? 5. Aluminum roofing sheets, mayroon ba kayo? 6. Mabuti. Puwede bang ipagreserba mo ako ng labindalawang sheets? 7. Oo. Dalawang kilo nga 8. Wala na. Iyan lang. Pupunta ako riyan nang mga tanghali 9. Paalam.

Unit 17 Exercise 1 1. Mali 2. Tama 3. Mali 4. Tama. Exercise 2 ninong, simbahan, pulot-gata, ninang, retratista, singsing, pagkain Exercise 3 1. Kakainan ko ng pansit ang plato 2. Tinutulungan ko siya 3. Lalagyan namin ng rosas ang halaman dito 4. Gusto kong bigyan si Larry nito 5. Lalagyan ba natin nito doon? 6. Huwag mong aalisan ng libro ang mesa Exercise 4 1. tutulungan 2. nilakihan 3. sinuklian 4. sasamahan 5. binigyan 6. hinalikan 7. sarapan 8. palitan Exercise 5 1. Paglabas... 2. Maraming kumuha.... 3. Maraming sasakvan... 4. Dumating ang bagong.... 5. Inihanda ng mga tagapagluto.... 6. Maraming pagkain 7. Ang mga nagluluto 8. Tumulong sa paghahain 9. Habang kumakain 10. May tugtugin... 11. Isa sa mga tugtugin 12. Inanyayahan ng mga panauhin 13. Tuwang-tuwa 14. Napagod sa pagsayaw 15)Sa dulang, nagbigay ng... 16. Nagbigay din 17. Isa-isang nagpaalam Exercise 7 1. Nasusulatan mo na ba si Sophie? 2. Maitatapon ni Harry ang basura lagi 3. May binubuksan siyang kabinet ngayon 4. Hindi masasamahan ni Caroline si Phil sa bayan mamayang gabi 5. Sino ang naisakay mo sa kotse kagabi? Exercise 8 1. Ang paghalik sa kamay ng mga lolo at lola. 2. Ang lola 3. Upang maging puhunan 4. Ang unang makarating sa bahay ang boss Exercise 9 1. siya mismo 2. Mismong kami 3. nila mismo 4. ikaw, mismo 5.

Mismong sina Fred **Exercise 10** 1. natutulog 2. nakikipag-usap sa kaibigan 3. naliligo 4. naglalaba 5. namamasiyal 6. umiinom

#### Unit 18

Exercise 1 1. pista 2.mamayang gabi 3. mga damit at mga laruan 4. dapat mayaman siya 5. pag-akyat sa kawayan, pagsungkit ng laso, pagsakay sa kalabaw 6, upang ilibot sa bayan 7, ang tenyente Exercise 2 1. kapalaran 2. katamaran 3. kawalan 4. kayamanan 5. kabahayan 6. kamalian Exercise 3 karunungan 2. kasinungalingan 3. kalalakihan, kababaihan 4. karapatan 5. kakayahan Exercise 5 1. False (gusto) 2. False (upang maghanda 3. False. (ginagastos kaagad) 4. False. (Hindi mabuti) 5. False. (Hindi mabuti para sa lahat. Exercise 6 1. Oo, pupunta kami sa pista 2. Mahilig akong sumayaw 3. Saan makakabili ng pagkain at inumin? 4. Salamat, sumama ka sa amin. 5. O sige, hahanapin ka namin mamaya 6. Paalam. Exercise 7 1. Makikikain si Auntie Marge sa kanila mamaya. 2. Kanino ka nakiupo? 3. Makikipamili ka ba kina auntie dot? 4. Nakikipag-away na naman si Jose 5. Nakikipag-usap pa ako kay Janet. Exercise 8 1. Maaari bang makipag-usap kami kay Ginoong Reyes? 2. Puwede bang makitulog ako sa kanila? 3. Huwag sana kayong makipag-away sa mga bata 4. Maaari bang makisakay kami kina Baby? 5. Puwede bang makipagluto ang mga bisita dito? Exercise 9 1. Nagaaral siyang humawak ng kalabaw 2. Medyo kausapin ang kalabaw 3. Oo. Maaari siyang sumakay sa kalabaw 4. Nagtrabaho siya sa isang sabsaban ng kabayo sa Inglaterra. Exercise 10 1. Ganoon kabait si ginoong Cruz sa amin 2. Ganito ba ang paggawa ng silyang rattan? 3. Paano ang pagsara ng kahong ito? 4. Hindi ba ganito ang pagluto ng adobo? 5. Sabihin mo sa akin ang pagtugtog ng himig na ito. Exercise 11 1. ganito 2. ganiyan 3. ganiyan 4. ganito 5. ganoon 6. ganito 7. ganiyan 8. ganoon 9. ganito 10. ganiyan 11. ganoon 12. ganito

#### Unit 19

Exercise 1 1. mga punong-kahoy 2. rosal, sampaguita, rosas, camia 3. Gumawa siya ng palaisdaan 4. Nagpaluto ng kakanin si Kiko 5. Maganda ang buhay sa bukid: may mga punong-kahoy, masarap ang pagkain, may mga bulaklak etc. Exercise 2 1. Nagpapakuha ako ng libro sa kanila 2. Magpapalabas ba tayo ng silya? 3. Nagpapasok ba si Henry ng mga maleta kanina? 4. Saan ka nagpapabibili ng gulay at

prutas? 5. Nagpabasa siya ng aklat sa klase. Exercise 3 1) Seven 2) a) Medyo huli na ako OR Alas\_\_\_\_ ako nakarating. b) Oo, natrapik ako. c) Nasa kusina ang Nanay ko. d) Hindi lahat. Nagpaluto ako ng ibang putahe. w) Oo. d) May kilala akong masarap magluto. Chef siya. Exercise 4 1. Gusto niyang magpakain ng mga baboy 2. Si Kiko 3. Mga manok 4. Kasi pinagluto na ni Kiko ang Misis niya ng almusal. Exercise 5 1. pasusulatin 2. pinaglinis ng kotse 3. pagtatahiin ng bestida 4. nagpapagupit 5. nagpapaganda Exercise 6 1. Nagpapaligo si Mang Kiko ng kalabaw sa ilog 2. Nagpapakain ng manok si Roy 3. Nagsasampay ng damit ang asawa ni Mang Kiko 4. Pinaaalis ng batang babae ang mga ibon 5. Nagpapalipad ng saringgola ang batang lalaki. Exercise 7 3. Pinagbuti ni Elvie ang kaniyang trabaho kagabi 1. Pasasamahin ko si Michael kay Jim sa bayan sa isang linggo 2. Pinamili namin si Lisa kahapon 1. Pinapag-aral ni Lina si Georgina kanina. 2. Pinasulat daw ni Patricia si Larry noong isang buwan. Exercise 8 1. damo 2. si roy 3. hinog na ang guyabano 4. para inumin ng mga hayop 5, sa loob ng murang niyog. Exercise 9 1, pinatutulog 2. pinatatakbo 3. pinaglilinis Exercise 10 1. ipalalagay 2. ipasok 3. ipamimigay 4. ipinaayos 5. papintahan

#### Unit 20

Kiko 3. mga pagkain lang 4. Malaking abala ang ibinigay nila kay Kiko **Exercise 2** 1. Kasimbait ni Remy si Bing. (Remy is as kind as Bing) 2. Kasimputi ng camia ang rosal. (Camia is as white as rosal) 3. Kasintaas ng St. Paul's Cathedral ang BT Tower (The BT Tower is as tall as St. Paul's Cathedral) 4. Kasinluwang ng pantalon ko ang pantalon mo (My trousers are as wide as your trousers) 5. Kasingkipot nito iyan. (This is as tight as that) 6. Hindi kasingganda ang hardin ko ng hardin mo (My garden is not as pretty as yours) 7. Magkasimbuti ang gulay at prutas (Vegetables and fruits are equally good) **Exercise 3** 1. Kailangan niyang bumili ng pampasalubong 2. sa Priscilla's Gift Shop 3. para kay Viv at Tim 4. nilalang handbag 5. sa pamamagitan ng credit card

Exercise 1 1. Isang kalabaw na inukit sa kahoy 2. magdaramdam si

- 6. mag-iimpake pa sila. Exercise 4 1. panlakad 2. pambayad
- 3. pangkain Exercise 5 1. pangkamot 2. pamputol 3. panlaba
- 4. panulat 5. pamasiyal Exercise 6 1. Pangkamot ng likod ang patpat
- 2. Pamputol ng kahoy ang itak 3. Panlaba ang sabon 4. Panulat ang lapis

5. Pamasiyal ang gomang sapatos. **Exercise 7** 1. Aba, huwag kayong mag-alaala 2. Mas tahimik sa Inglaterra 3. Magandang kuwadro para sa kaniyang pamilya 4. sumulat lagi si roy o kaya'y tumawag.

**Exercise 9** 1. Mas matangkad si Tom kaysa kay Benny 2. Higit na masipag si Benny kaysa kay Tom. 3. Mas mataba si Benny kaysa kay Tom. 4. Mas masaya si Benny kaysa kay Tom

Exercise 10 Self-assessment (Ask your Filipino friends to help)

	+an	abangan	abayan	abutan	×	×	akyatan	×	×	alayan	alibadbaran	×	alisan	×	ambagan	· ×		×	×	×	awitan	ayusan	babaan	X	bagsakan	×	bahinan	×
	±	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	ialay	×	×	×	×	iambag	×		×	×		×	×	×	×	ibagsak	×	×	×
	+in	×	×	abutin	aknin	aksayahin	akyatin	alalahanin	alamin	×	alibadbarin	×	alisin	×	×	anakin		×	×	araw-arawin	awitin	ayusin	babain	baguhin	×	bagyuhin	×	×
LIST	mang+	mang-abang	×	X	mang-ako	×	×	×	×	mang-alay	×	×	×	×	×	X		manganak	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
VERB LIST	mag+	×	×	×	×	mag-aksaya	×	×	×	mag-alay	×	×	mag-alis	mag-alsa	mag-ambag	mag-anak		X	mag-aral	×	×	mag-ayos	×	×	magbagsak	×	×	×
	-480-	×	umabay	umabot	umako	umaksaya	umakyat	umalaala	X	×	×	umalis	×	umalsa	umambag	×		×	X	×	umawit	umayos	bumaba	bumago	bumagsak	bumagyo	bumahin	bumalik
	Meaning	to wait for	to accompany	to arrive, reach	to claim	to waste (time)	to climb	to remember	to know	to offer/dedicate	to be nauseous	to leave	to remove	to raise/rise/strike	to contribute	to treat as one's	own child	to have a baby	to study	to do something daily	to sing	to tidy up	to descend/go down	to change	to drop/fall	to be hit by typhoon	to sneeze	to come back
	Stem	abang	abay	apot	ako	aksaya	akyat	alaala	alam	alay	alibadbad	alis	alis	alsa	ampag	anak		anak	aral	araw-araw	awit	ayos		bago			pahin	balik

balik	to return something	×	magbalik	×	×	ibalik	×
bangon	to get up (from lying down)	bumangon	magbangon	×	×	ibangon	×
bantay	to guard	×	magbantay	×	x	×	bantayan
baon	to bring provision	×	magbaon	×	baunin	ĸ	×
baon	to bury	bumaon	magbaon	×	×	ibaon	×
basa	to read	bumasa	magbasa	X	basahin	×	basahan
basa	to wet	×	magbasa	mambasa	basain	×	×
basag	to break (as in glass)	bumasag	magbasag	mambasag	basagin	×	×
bastos	to be bad mannered!	bumastos	X	mambastos	bastusin	×	×
	rude						
bata	to become young	bumata	×	×	×	×	×
bata	to suffer	X	magbata	×	batahin	×	×
batid	to know	×	×	×	batirin	×	×
bili	to buy	bumili	×	mamili	bilhin	ibili	bilhan
bili	to sell	×	magbili	X	×	×	×
bola	to fool someone	×	×	mambola	bolahin	×	×
bubo	to spill	×	magbubo	×	×	oqnqi	bubuan
bukas	to open	by itself	bumukas	×	×	×	X
bukas	to open something	`×	magbukas	×	×	ibukas	buksan
bukid	to farm	×	magbukid	mambukid	bukirin	×	×
buhay	to give life	bumuhay	magbuhay	×	buhayin	×	×
buhay	to live	×	×	mamuhay	×	X	×
bunga	to bear fruit	bumunga	magbunga	×	×	ibunga	×
pusog	to make full (appetite)	ponung	×	X	busugin	×	×
buwis	to pay tax	×	magbuwis	×	×	ĸ	buwisan
kaibigan	to befriend	kumaibigan	×	X	kaibiganin	X	×
kailangan	to need	kumailangan	×	mangailangan	kailanganin	×	×
kain	to eat	kumain	magkain	mangain	kainin	ikain	kainan
kagat	to bite	kumagat	×	mangagat	kagatin	ikagat	kagatan

×	×	kantahan	ĸ	×	×	ĸ	K	kunan	×	kulayan		dalhan	×	dalanginan	)	dalian	×		damitan	×	dumihan	×	×	eskubahan	×	
×	×	×	×	×	ikilos	×	×	ikuha	×	ikulay	×	: ×	×	idalangan	idalaw	×	×		idamit	×	×	K	×	×	×	
kaliwain	kamayin	kantahin		kilalanin		kitain	kitain	kunin	kulangin	×	dalhin	X	dalahin	dalanginin	dalawin	daliin	damahin		damitin	×	×	×	eskandaluhin	eskubahin	gabihin	
mangaliwa	×	×	mangapit-bahay	mangilala	×	×	x	manguha	×	×	×	×	mandala	manalangin	×	x	×		manamit	X	×	*	×	×	×	
×	magkamay		×	×	×	×	magkita	×	magkulang	magkulay	magdala	, ×	magdala	×	×	×	magdama	11502	magdamit	×	magdumi	magdusa	mageskandalo	mageskoba	×	
kumaliwa	×	kumanta	×	kumilala	kumilos	kumita	×	kumuha	х	×	×	×	×	dumalangin	dumalaw	×	dumama		×	×	dumumi	×	×	×	gumabi	
to turn left	to use the hand	to sing	to visit neighbours	to know	to move	to earn	to meet up	to get take	to lack	to colour	to carry	to bring to someone	to catch fish with a net			to make quick	to feel	to make many	to wear clothes	to be a must/ought to	to dirty	to suffer	to create a scandal	to brush clothes	to be overtaken by night	
kaliwa	kamay		kapit-bahay	kilala	kilos		kita	kuha	ho	kulay	dala			in		dali		an	damit	(D)	8.	dusa	oli	eskopa	gabi	

aling		×	×	manggaling	×	×	×
aling		gumaling	x	×	X	×	×
alit	to be angry		×	manggalit	galitin	X	×
amit	to use	gumamit	×	×	gamitin	×	gamitan
amot	to treat/cure	gumamot	X	manggamot	gamutin	×	×
ana		×	X	×	×	×	ganahan
anda		gumanda	X	×	×	×	gandaha
ata	to cook in	×	maggata	×	×	igata	gataan
	coconut milk						
awi	to turn towards	gumawi	×	×	×	igawi	gawian
ibik	to shout for help	gumibik	×	×	X	×	gibikan
iling	to grind	gumiling	×	X	gilingin	×	×
ising	to wake up	gumising	X	manggising	gisingin	×	×
usto	to like	gumusto	×	×	gustuhin	ĸ	×
utom	to feel hungry	gumutom	X	manggutom	gutumin	×	×
akot	to load baggage	humakot	maghakot	×	hakutin	×	hakutan
agilap	to search for/ look for hun	humagilap	maghagilap	manghagilap	hagilapin	ihagilap	×
agis	to throw	humagis	maghagis	manghagis	×	ihagis	hagisan
angin	to blow (as in wind)	humangin	×	×	×	×	hanginar
apo	to suffer from tiredness	×	×	×	hapuin	×	×
asik	to plant seed	×	maghasik	×	×	ihasik	hasikan
ayag	to reveal	×	maghayag	×	×	ihayag	×
iga	to lie down (a ma verb)	mahiga	X	×	×	ihiga	higaan
ila	to pull humila	humila	maghila	manghila	hilahin	ĸ	×
indi	to say no/ turn down	humindi	×	×	×	×	hindian
intay	to wait	×	maghintay	×	hintayin	×	×

y x
hiramin ihiram
golndi
H-14.5
Y
x
×
×
×
×
initin
*
×
×
X
×
ilagay
testate ilapit
laruin x
×
×

lawio	to take a long time	lumawie	maelawig	K	×	ilawig	lawigan
lavae	to sail	lumavag	maglayag	×	×	X	×
lavo	to distance oneself	lumayo	X	×	×	ilayo	layuan
libak	to mock, humiliate	lumibak	×	manglibak	libakin	×	×
libing	to bury	X	maglibing	×	×	ilibing	×
ligo	to take a bath (a ma verb) maligo	) maligo	×	×	×	×	liguan
ligoit	to keep / tidy up	) ×	×	×	×	×	×
limos	to give alms	×	maglimos	×	×	ilimos	limusan
limot	to forget	lumimot	×	×	limutin	×	×
lindol	to have an earthquake	lumindol	×	×	×	×	×
linis	to clean		maglinis	×	linisin	×	linisan
lingkod	to serve	×	maglingkod	×	×	ĸ	×
lipad	to fly	lumipad	×	×	liparin	ilipad	×
litaw	to appear	lumitaw	×	×	×	ilitaw	litawan
liwanag	to become brighter	lumiwanag	magliwanag	X	liwanagin	×	liwanag
loko	to fool	lumuko	magloko	manloko	lokohin	×	×
lukso	to jump	lumukso	×	×	luksuhin	×	luksuha
lugas	to fall off	lumugas	×	×	lugasin	×	×
lulon	to swallow	lumulon	×	×	lulunin	×	×
	A CONTRACTOR						
mav-ari	to own/ claim	x	magmay-ari	×	×	×	×
mervenda	to have a snack	*	magmeryenda	×	meryendahin	×	ĸ
mahal	to make dear/ expensive x	×	magmahal	×	×	×	mahalar
mahal	to love	×	×	×	mahalin	×	×
minindal	to have a snack	×	magminindal	×	minindalin	×	×
miting	to have a meeting	×	magmiting	×	×	×	×
mukha	to be similar to/ look like x	×	magmukha	×	×	X	×
munekahi	to suggest	×	magmungkahi	×	×	imungkahi	ĸ
mura	to become cheaper	X	magmura	X	×	×	muraha
nakaw	to steal	×	magnakaw	×	nakawin	×	nakawa
nais	to desire/ wish	×	magnais	×	naisin	×	×

339

ningas	to have flame	×	magningas	×	X		×
ngiti	to smile	ngumiti	×	×	×	×	neitian
nguya	to chew	ngumuya	magnguya	×	nguyain	inguya	×
obserba	to observe	*	mag-ohserha	-	obserbahin	,	ohearhohan
		¢	mag occasion	•	COSCIDANIII	•	COSCIDATIAN
opera	to operate	umopera	mag-opera	×	uperahin	×	uperahan
8	to say yes	oouin	X	X	×	×	unhan
oras	to measure the time of x	×	mag-oras	×	orasin	×	orasan
paa	to be barefooted	×	magpaa	×	paahin	· ×	×
paalam	to bid goodbye	×	magpaalam	×	- ×	×	700 000
pakli	to reply/ answer	pumakli	×	×	×	ipakli	×
paksiw	to cook this native dish x	×	magpaksiw	×	paksiwin	ipaksiw	*
pakumbaba	to be humble	×	magpakumbaba x	×	. ×	· ×	pakumbabaan
pakundangan	bakundangan to have respect	×	magpakundangan	an	×	×	, ×
pakundanganan	an						
pagitan	to be a go-between	pumagitan	×	mamagitan	×	ipagitan	pagitanan
pahimakas	to say farewell	×	magpahimakas	x	×	ipahimakas	pahimakasan
pahintulot	to give permission	×	magpahintulot	×	X	ipahintulot	pahintulutan
pahinga	to take a rest	×	magpahinga	mamahinga	×	×	pahingahan
pait	to become bitter	pumait	×	×	×	×	· ×
palamuti	to decorate	×	magpalamuti	X	×	ipalamuti	palamutihan
palayaw	to nickname	×	magpalayaw	×	×	ipalayaw	palayawan
palengke	to go to the market	×	X	mamalengke	X	×	. ×
panaginip	to dream	×	×	managinip	panaginipin	×	panaginipan
panalangin	to pray	×	×	manalangin	×	ipanalangin	panalanginan
pangako	to promise	×	magpangako	mangako	×	ipangako	pangakuan
paniwala	to believe	×	×	maniwala	×	×	paniwalaan
pangampa	to worry	×	X	mangampa	×	×	pangambahan
pasok	to enter	pumasok	×	X	pasukin	×	pasukan
para	to stop a bus/ Jeepney	pumara	magpara	×	parahin	ipara	parahan
pasko	to spend Christmas	×	magpasko	×	X	×	×

to decide	X	magpasiya	×	*	ipasiya	pasuyahan
to take a stroll	×	magpasyal	mamasyal	×	×	×
to die	×	×	mamatay	X	×	×
to kill	pumatay	magpatay	×	patayin	×	×
to guide	pumatnubay	magpatnubay	mamatnubay	×	ipatmubay	patnubayan
to direct	pumatungot	×	mamatnugot	X	×	patnugutan
to irrigate	, K	magpatubig	×	X	×	patubigan
to continue	×	magpatuloy	×	×	×	×
to sweat	×	magpawis	mamawis	pawisin	×	pawisan
to close eves	pumikit	magpikit	×	×	ipikit	pikitan
to turn	oumihit	magnihit	X	pihitin	×	×
to onene un	pumila	; ×	X	×	ipila	pilahan
to select/ choose	pumila	magpili	mamili	piliin	ipili	pilian
to twist	pumilipit	magpilipit	mamilipit	pilipitin	ipilipit	×
to invist	. *	magpilit	mamilit	×	×	X
to sign	pumirma	5 ×	×	×	ipirma	pirmahan
to put topether/ to join		magpisan	×		ipisan	×
to attend fiesta	. ×	magpista	mamista	*	X	×
to whistle	pumito	ı x	×	×	×	pituhan
		// // // // // // // // // // // // //	10.0			
to have the radio on	×	mag-radyo	×	× :	٧.	٠.
to search	×	magrikisa	mangrikisa	rikisahin	×	rikisanan
to offer a gift	×	magregalo	×	×	iregalo	regaluhan
to wear a watch	×	magrelos	×	×	×	relosan
to peal (as in bells)	rumepeke	magrepeke	×	repekehin	irepeke	×
to recite the rosary	, K	magrosaryo	×	X	×	×
to prescribe	×	magreseta	×	X	ireseta	resetahan
to issue/ give a receipt	×	magresibo	×	×	iresibo	resibuhan
to eav	×	magsabi	×	sabihin	×	sabihan
tochoke	maesakal	manakai	sakalin	×	×	×
to ride	sumakay	magsakay	×	X	isakay	sakyan
	AL - COLD COLD COLD COLD COLD COLD COLD COLD	The state of the s				

X			X	×	saglitan	sagutan	<b>×</b>		<b>.</b> ×	saliwan	x	sanggunian	saplutan	sarapan	× 1	A Saveavan	sigawan	sulatan	simulan	supnau	and the Land	Sukanan	< ×	sandan	×	×	×	×	taasan	×	tabihan	takbuhan	takluban	×	tadyakan	×	×	××	talumpatian	×	tamnan	tanuran	K I	tansman	×	tawanan	ĸ	tawagan	tayuan	A tikman	×	. ×	tirahan	X	<b>×</b> >	A	911911
×			×	× .	isaglit	isagot	×	¥	<b>:</b> ×	isaliw	×	isangguni	isaplot	× ;	X .	isavsav	isigaw	isulat	X	isubo	o Alaso	ISUKA	isumpa	pounsi	×	isnot	×	×	itaas	×	×	×	itakloh	tadtad	×	itago	× .	ıtahı	italumoati	itama	itanim	×.	itanong	itanon	×	×	×	*	× .	Itayo	< ×	itinda	x	X	× ì	X itnotoo	SAISMIT S
isakdal			×	×	saglitin	sagutin	X	salatin	salitain	×	sanayin	×	saplutin	× >	A coverain	X	×	sulatin	×	×	>	< ×	sumpain	sunurin	sunugin	suutin	×	*	×	×	×	takbuhin	takalın	tadtarin	×	×	×	tahiin	X X	. ×	×	×	tanungin	tanggapin	tapusin	X	tawagin	×	×	× ×	tamasahin	X	×	×	×	X tuotuoin	ungungui
×		manakmal	manakit	managana	managiit	×	managot	manalat	manalita	×	×	manangguni	ĸ 1	X	Indial III		manigaw	×	×	×	,	< ×	manumpa	×	manunog	×	×	4	*	manaba	×	×	× ×	< >	manadvak	×	managumpay	manahi	manalumnati	X	K	×	×	× >	< H		×	×	×	ĸ >	K >	< ×	manira	×	×	× >	×
magpasakdal	•	x	×	magsagana	magsagiit	×	×	×	magsalita	magsaliw	magsanay	magsangguni	magsapiot	magrarili	magsamm	magsaysay		magsulat	magsimula	magsubo	eduspem	magsulak	· ×	X	magsunog	magsnot	×	€	maetaas	· ×	×	×	magtakal	magradiad	Inagracian X	magtago	magtagumpay	magtahi	X maestalumnati	magrama	magtanim	magtanod	magtanong	magtanggap	magtapos	magtawa	magtawag	×	×	magtayo	X	maetinda	×	magtiyaga	×	X	maguigeog
×		sumakmal	sumakit	X	sumagnt	sumagot	×	×	x	sumaliw (	×	sumangguni	× ;	<b>4</b> ×	Sumavaw	×	sumigaw	sumulat	×	×	sırmırka	sumulak	sumumpa	poununs	Soununs	X	sumnweldo	common		tumaba	tumabi	tumakbo	tumakai	A	himadvak	X	×	tımahi	tumalon	∢ ⊁	. ×	×	×	tumanggap	furnanos	tumawa	×	tumawag	tumayo	x(	tumikim	× ×	tumira	X	tumubo	tumugon	tumugtog
to charge or	accuse in court	to snatch	to hurt	to be abundant	a short time	to answer	to be answerable to	to feel	to speak/ talk/ say	to accompany(instrument)	to practice	to consult	to make delicious	to live on one's own	to dance	to narrate	to shout	to write	to start/ begin	to put some food	to vomit	to boil	to swear an oath	to follow	to burn	to wear	to arous' to vira		to emico	to become fatter	to be at one side	to run	to measure	to cover	to bick	to hide	to succeed	to sew	to jump	to talky to goree	to plant	to keep guard	to ask	to accept/ receive	to finish	to laugh	to call	to call on the telephone tumawag	to stand up	to erect (a building etc.)x	to taste	to sell	to live (in a place)	to be patient	to grow	to reply/ answer	to play an instrument
sakdal		sakmal	sakit	sagana	348111	sagot	sagot	salat	salita	saliw	sanay	Sangguni	sapior	sarili	sayaw	saysay	sigaw	sulat	simula	ogns	suka	sulak	sumpa	pouns	Bouns	suot	tase		888	taha	tabi	takbo	takal	taktob	taduak	tago	tagumpay	tahi .	talon	tanumpan	tanim	tanod	tanong	tanggap	tapon	tapos	tawag	tawag	tayo	tayo	tikim	tamasa	tira	tiyaga	tubo	tugon	tugtog

mala	to ignore	×	magtulala	×	×	×	tulalaan
ılay	to cross a bridge	tumulay	×	manulay	tulayin	×	tulayan
tulog	to sleep (ma verb)	matulog	×	X	×	itulog	tulugan
ıloy	to enter	tumuloy	magtuloy	X	×	×	×
rloy	to continue	×	X	×	×	ituloy	×
tumba	to tumble down	tumumba	X	×	tumbahin	itumba	×
tunaw	to melt	tumunaw	magtunaw	X	tunawin	×	×
tupad	to fulfil	tumupad	×	×	tuparin	×	×
tupok	to be burned	×	X	×	tupukin	×	×
turo	to teach	×	magturo	×	×	ituro	turuan
turo	to point	tumuro	×	×	×	ituro	×
tuwang	to help	tumuwang	magtuwang	×	×	×	×
npo	to cough	oqnun	×	×	ubuhin	×	×
npos	to consume/ exhaust	soqnum	×	×	ubusin	×	ubusan
ulinig	to listen to	×	×	×	ulinigin	×	ulinigan
lit	to repeat	umulit	×	×	ulitin	×	×
umaga	to be caught by	×	mag-umaga	×	umagahin	×	×
ulan	to rain	umulan	×	×	ulanin	*	manalu
untag	to remind	umuntag	×	×	untagin	: ×	X X
uwi	to go home	umuwi	x	×	, ,	×	uwian
una	to go ahead first	umuna	mag-una	manguna	unahin	×	×
unawa	to understand	umunawa	X	×	unawain	×	×
odn	to sit down (ma verb)	manpo	×	×	×	×	upnan
usap	to converse	×	mag-usap	×	×	×	<b>'</b> ×
wakas	to end	×	magwakas	×	ĸ	×	wakasan
wala	to lose	×	×	×	X	iwala	×
walang-hiya	to be shameless	X	magwalanghiya x	ах	×	×	×
yabong	to grow	yumabong	magyabong	×	X	×	×
yamot	to annoy	x	×	×	yamutin	×	×
yapak	to step on	yumapak	×	×	×	iyapak	yapakan

# TAGALOG-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

Trying to get your tongue around unfamiliar words in a new language is often something of an uphill struggle. It can be frustrating to discover that words are not always pronounced as they appear on the page. With this in mind, we have provided three small symbols or 'accents' to help you find the correct stress or sound for each word in the Tagalog-English Glossary. The accents are as follows:

This accent serves to lengthen the sound of the vowel. For example, the Tagalog word lata (or 'tin' in English) would be pronounced 'lah-tah', with the stress on the first syllable. The first 'a' sound is long, something akin to the long 'a' in the English words 'bar' or 'car'. (In the unit dialogues this stress is shown by making the stressed syllable **bold**.)

`This accent is only ever found on the last vowel of a word. It informs you that the vowel sound is shorter than the vowel with the 'accent. For example, the Tagalog word kasápì (to be a member of) would be pronounced 'ka-sah-pee', with a long 'ah' sound and a short 'ee' sound.

A This accent is found on a number of words ending with a vowel. It indicates a glottal stop – a short, abrupt sound, almost as though the pronunciation of the vowel has been interrupted, like a tape recorder being switched off. For example, the Tagalog words **basâ** (wet) and **bása** (to read) are distinguished from one another by their very different accents. (Glottal stops are shown in the unit dialogues by italics.)

áalis will leave áalmusalin what someone's having for breakfast abá oh! / hey! / well! abála disturbance abá oó / aba oo naman of course ábay consort abá ópò certainly, sir (mga) ábay sa kasál wedding assistant(s) adóbong pusít squid adobo áking ináanak my godchild aklát (libro) book akó rin me too alám know alam mo bá do you know alas dós nang hápon 2.00 p.m. alas dóse 12.00 alas nuwébe y médya 9.30

alas saís v médya 6.30 alin which one alís departure almusál breakfast Amérika America áming our áming anák / anak namin our child ámpalaya bitter melon anák son / daughter / child ang the ang bahálà will look after ang dating the arrival ang gágawâ will do ang mga itó these ang mga iyán those ang bill ngà námin our bill, please ang kailángan ninyó what you need ang kaínin mo what you have to eat ang kináin mo what you ate ang gusto ninyo(ng) what you like ang ibig ninyo what you want ang maikling gupit short cut ang nakáin mo what you have eaten ang paborito ko(ng) my favourite ang pangálan ko my name ang púnta the destination / going to ang súkat the size ang súkat ko my measurement anó(ng) what anó ang mga óras ng what are the times of anó namán itó? and what is this? ano pá what else ano pò ang maipaglilingkod ko what (service) can I do ano pong gupít what (kind of) haircut anóng edád how old anóng óras what time anóng pangálan ninyó what's your name? (formal) anu-anó what (plural) apó grandchild apritáda a kind of dish áraw day/sun araw-áraw every day asáwa husband/wife asáwa niyáng his/her spouse asín salt at and ate older sister at sakâ and also áyaw ko / ayoko I don't like

bábahâ will flood babáe female/ woman babágay pò sa inyó it will suit vou babágyo there will be a typhoon bakâ might/cow baká hindî might not bakánte vacancy bakasyón ka bá are you on vacation? bákit why bákit hindî why not bágay thing bágay ba sa ákin does it suit me bágo new bágo(ng) binyag newly baptised bágo(ng) kasal newly wed bahálà na come what may báhay house baldé bucket bále wala means nothing bandá band bangkâ boat (canoe) bandéra / bandila flag bangâ earthen pot bangús milkfish barkó ship báryo barrio/ village báso drinking glass bátà child bátok nape basúra rubbish báwa't óras each hour bayábas guavas báyad ko my payment bayáw brother-in-law bíbigyan kitá I'll give you bíbili will buy bíbili akó ng I'll buy/ I'm going to buy biglá(ng) suddenly bigyán mo akó give me bibig mo your mouth bibilhin will buy bíbili akó I will buy bibingká a local delicacy bili ná come and buy bilobiló a local delicacy in coconut milk binátà bachelor binigyán was given binyág baptism binyágan(g) ito this baptism bintánà window bisíta guest/visitor

biváhe travel blusá blouse bólpen pen bubúti will become better búkas tomorrow búkas nang gabí tomorrow night búkas nang hápon tomorrow afternoon búkas nang tanghálì tomorrow midday búkas nang umága tomorrow morning búhat sa from búhav life buhók ninyo (also inyong buhok) your hair bulaklák flower bumabâ ka you alight / you get off bumalik return bumflang counted bumilí to buy bumibili buying/buy bumúbulong whispering buntál a kind of Philippine fibre buóng lugár whole place burdádo(ng) embroidered ka vou (singular) kaagád immediately kaakit-ákit attractive kabayánan town kabávo horse kadálasan often kailán when kakáin will eat kakánin rice cakes kakláse classmate kagabí last night kagulúhan chaos kahápon vesterday kahápon nang hápon vesterday afternoon káhit even though káhit saán anywhere kahón box káhov wooden kaibigan friend kailán when kailángan ko (ng) I need kailángan po námin we need (formal) kalabása squash / pumpkin kalabáw water buffalo kalimútan forget kaliwâ left kalsáda / kalye street kálve road / street káma bed

kamáv arm kamátis tomatoes kámera / kodak camera kamí we kánin boiled rice kanína a while ago kaníno whose kanino pa whose else kanivá(ng) her kánto corner kaopisína ko my officemates kapág if/when kapaligirán environment kapatid sister/brother karamihan many of kapitán captain karósa cart kasabáv at the same time kasabihán saving/adage kasál / kasálan wedding kasama companion/together with/with/ including kasáma ba is it included? kasáma ko I'm with kasáma nilá accompanied by them kasí because katabí kó next to me katahimikan peace (ng) katawán (of the) body katóliko Catholic katúlad ng like kaugalián custom kaunting masáhe a little massage kausápin talk to kawávan bamboo kay [+ name] for [+ name] kay / ke mahál ngà in fact it's expensive kay gandá how beautiful kayâ múna tayo why don't we first kavâ that's why kaya palá no wonder kayó you (plural informal/ formal singular) kavo namán oh! please! kávsa than kinákabitán being attached ko mv kótse car kubéta toilet kukúnan will take ( a photograph) kukúnin will get / fetch

kúlay colour kumáin eat kumakáin eating kumánan turn right kumaliwâ turn left kumbidádo invited kumúha took kumústa kayó how are you (formal singular / informal plural) kúnan to take kundî instead kung if kung áyaw ninyó if you don't like kung bákit why kung ganoón /gayon if that's the case kung gústo mo(ng) if you want kung hindî if not/ had not been kung maaárì if possible kung mínsan sometimes kung puwéde sána if possible kung saán where kung támà if right kurtína curtain kutsílvo knife kutsintâ a delicacy kuwárta money kuwádro frame kuwárto room/quarter/one fourth kúya older brother daán road/way dágat sea dáhil sa because dahil lang sa just because of dalandán / dalanghítà oranges dalawá two dalawandaáng píso 200 pesos dalawampúng ányos 20 years old dalawáng reséta two prescriptions daliín be auick damít-pangkasál wedding dress damó grass dápat must / should dárating will arrive dating arrival dekorasyón(g) decoration dilà-dílà a delicacy díla mo vour toneue diláw vellow direksiyón direction dirétso straight 'di sa ákin of course it's mine

disiótso pésos 18 pesos díto/ ríto here díto lang po sa ibaba just here below díto múna just here doon there doséna dozen dos singkuwénta 2.50 pesos dúlang table dumárating arriving dumídilim becoming dark dumirétso to walk straight ahead estudyánte student éto (see heto) here is éto lang just this éto po here you are madam/ sir gaáno kalakí how big gabí night gáling sa from gamót medicine ganito pô like this, sir ganito(ng) úrì this kind ganiyán like that ganoón like that ganoón bá is that so / oh, my! ganoón láng just like that ganoón ngà really like that gáganapín will be held gágastusin will be spent ganiyán like that gasolína petrol gátas milk gawin be made gawin kó I'd do ginágawâ be made ginang Mrs ginisáng gúlay sauteed vegetables gúlay vegetables gumabí to become night gumandá to become fine/beautiful gumawâ to make gúrò teacher gustó like/want gústo kó(ng) I like / I want / I love gústo ninyó vou like gústo kong I'd like gústo ko rín I also like gústo pa namín ng we want some more gústo po ba ninvó do vou like/ would you like guyabáno guyabano fruit (large, soft white) halíkayo come on everyone

hábang while haláman plants handa food preparation handaán reception hanggáng until hanggáng itaás reaching the top hanggáng sa until hápon afternoon hapúnan supper harapán front hátinggabi midnight hawákan hold hávop animal héto / heto po here you are / here, sir héto ang bayad here's the payment héto na here comes higit more hípon prawns híhintò will stop hindî no hindí ba isn't it? hindi ba mahál not expensive (I hope) hindí ko gustó I don't like hindi na bále never mind hindi namán not quite / not so hindi na pô not anymore hindi pa not yet hindí pò no, sir hindi sa ákin not mine hinóg ripe hintayín mo akó you wait for me hipag sister-in-law huhugásan ko lang I'll just wash humánap to find humángin was windy humihingî asking humshiram borrowing huwág don't ibáng kúlay rin other colours, too iba't ibáng different kinds íbig námin we want / like / would like ibigáy to give ibibigay will be given íbig n'yo ná would you like now íbig po ba ninyó ng do you want / like a ibilí to buy for ibinigáy handed / gave ibinuká opened ikalimáng gusálì fifth building ikatatló third ikáw ba talagá is it really you?

ikinagágalak ko kayóng makilála I'm pleased to meet you ikinasál got married idéya idea iláng béses how many times ihúlog to post (literally, to drop) ihuhúlog will post finom will drink finumin will be drunk ilabás show/bring out ilán(g) how many/ a few ilangilang ilangilang (flower) ililigid will be driven around inahín hen inanyayáhan invited inasikáso dealt with/attended to inávos fixed/arranged iniabót handed over inihandâ prepared inihatíd took to inshaw grilled inípon the savings invong buhók your hair Inglatérra England inumín drinks inúkit carved ipakihúlog mo could you post ipalálagay will cause to put ipambávad to pay with ipatápon will cause to throw ipapípitas will have something picked isá one isa ká sa mga you're one of the isáma to include isáng kahón one box isáng doséna(ng) one dozen isáng gabí per night isáng pláto(ng) a plate of isáng taón one year isdâ fish isináma accompanied isinúkat tried it on isúkat ninyó vou try itátanong will ask itím black itó this itong itim this black (one) itutúrò will show/ point iwásan lang please avoid iván that iyan láng that's all (just those)

iyón(g) that labánan contest labíndalawá twelve labinlimá fifteen lági always lahát everybody lahat-lahát all in all / altogether laláki man/ male lakárin to walk (it) lálò na especially lamán contents lang only/just lángit sky lanzónes lanzones (fruit similar to lychee) láot sea lápis pencil laráwan photograph / picture laruán(g) toy likurán behind / at the back lima(ng) píso five pesos limandaán(g) 500 Linggó Sunday línggo-linggó every week litsón suckling pig lóla grandmother 16lo grandfather lúbusan earnestly lugár place lumákad to walk / move lumangóy to swim maaárì can maaári ba(ng) is it possible/( see puwede bang) maaábot be able to reach mabáhò smelly mabait kind mabangó fragrant mabilís fast mabúti good mabúti kung ganoón that's good mabúti rin namán I'm fine, too mabúti po namán I'm fine, too (formal) makapág-almusál can have breakfast makapágbánat to be able to stretch makapághandâ be able to prepare makapál thick makatáwag to be able to call makatutúlong will be able to help makúlay colourful madádalâ be turned off madalî(ng) easily

madalí lang just easy magaling good at/ clever mag-áatubili hesitate mag-alalá worry mag-almusál to have breakfast magandá beautiful magandáng umága good morning magandáng gabi pô good evening (formal) magandáng hápon good afternoon mag-aáral will study magbábakasyon will go on vacation magbábasa will read magbabávad will pay magbiyáhe to travel magkáno how much magkáno namán how much is it? magkakáno how much each magdádagdag will add magdáramdam will feel bad mag-enjoy to enjoy maghandâ to prepare mag-fimpake will get packing mag-isíp to worry/think deeply magpalamíg muna have some refreshment magpápakain will feed magpápagod to become tired magpápalit to change (money) magpagupít have a haircut magpasénsiva to accept our shortcomings magsúkat pa try some more magtanóng enquire magulang parents magustuhán sana ninyo I hope you'd like it mahábà long mahírap difficult/ poor mahiyâ ka namán are you without shame mahúsay fine / very good at maiklî short (i.e. pencil) maikling buhók short hair maínit hot malaki bie malakí-lakí quite big malamíg cold malápit near maláyò far maléta suitcase maligáya(ng) happy maligáyang pagdatíng welcome malínis clean malift small

malift sa ákin small for me malulúgi I'll lose maluwáng loose mámavâ later mamangkâ to go boating mamasvál to take a stroll mámayang gabí tonight manggá mango mangingisdâ fisherman manók chicken manoód watch mantikílya margarine mápa map mapagpípilian to choose from marámi many / plenty maráming salámat thank you very much marumí dirty marúnong know masakít hurting / painful masaráp delicious/ great / nice/ good masayá happy mas bágay suits better mas lálò more mas maága earlier mas malakí bigger mag-aalalá more bothered/ be worried masúsunod will be followed masyádo(ng) very / too / quite / extremely mataás high matabáng bland / flat in taste mata mó your eyes matatandâ the old ones matatápos na gawáin jobs will be finished matúto will learn matutúlog will sleep mawáwalâ will disappear may has/have, there is/ there are mayáman rich mayáman namán kayó anyway, you are máy binili akó(ng) I bought may kilála akó I know someone may mésa ba kayó do you have a table may makakaínan bang is there any place to eat may nakalimútan forgot something may napílì has selected/ chosen mayroón / meron has/have there is/ there are médyo sort of / somewhat médyo maliít slightly small

médyo masikíp slightly small médyo nagúlat somewhat surprised mésa table mésa ninvó vour table mechádo pork / beef with tomato sauce. pepper and potatoes minsánan in one go mga pluraliser, similar to the English 's' mga alás sivéte medva about 7.30 mga limá about five modistá dressmaker mukhá(ng) looks/appears/seems mukháng malínis looks quite clean mulî again / once more muna first, for the time being munti(ng) regálo small gift múra cheap múra na pò it's already cheap, ma'am múra ang halagá the price is cheap/ right múrang niyóg young coconut múrang-múra very cheap na now/ already naávos managed to arrange na namán again na binilí ko dito that I bought here naka-arkilá was able to hire nakákahivá embarrassing nakákapangisdâ are able / manage to catch nakakitá happened to see / was able to see nakaháwak managed to handle nakaháwak holding on to nakahiga lying down nakatavô standing nakapamasyál managed to take a stroll nakatirá living nakíta ba ninyó did you see? nakikíta mo you see nág-abalá bothered nagawâ what's been done nájintindihán understand naifsip able to think about náis po ba ninvó do vou want nag-aáral studying / study nagbigáy gave nag-enióv enioved naghandâ prepared food nagkoronasyón crowned nag-iípon ng péra saving money nag-fisa alone naglulútò cooking

nagmamáno kissing the hand nag-paálam said goodbye nágpagupit had a haircut nagpalútò caused someone to cook nagpápa-akvát ask someone to climb nagpápabango making (something) fragrant nagpapakáin give them food nagpápaganda making(something) pretty nagpápalaki making (something) grow nagpápalit din ba kavó do vou also change? nágpasalamat gave thanks nagpuntá went nagséseremonya officiating nagtátaka wondering nagtátae akó I've got diarrhoea nagtítinda ba kavó do vou sell nagtrabáho worked nagustuhán I liked nag-úunahan beating each other (in a race) nahíhiyâ embarrassed namámangkâ boating nakabálot wrapped nakabilí was able to buy nakapamangkâ was able to go boating nakatúlog managed to sleep namán too / on the other hand námin our nanálo won nánay mother nang gabí at night nang hápon in the afternoon nang ibigáy when (it) was given nangingísdá fishing nang maága early nang mabúti soundly/well/better nang maluwág loosely nang umága in the morning nangungútang borrow money nápakagandá very pretty napakarámi(ng) so many napágod got tired nápansin noticed nárito ná here now / here comes nása (prefix) at / on / in / at the / on the / in the násaan where nása parke at the park nasiyáhan was pleased naúbos finished / consumed naupô sat down

ngayón now/ today

ngayón láng just now ngayóng linggó this week ngumitî smiled nilála(ng) woven ninang godmother nínong godfather ninyó your nitó this, (in the ng form) of this niyá his/her niyáng of that ng of/ of the ng bandána a scarf ng ibá other ones ngâ please / indeed / it's true ngayón now/today ngayóng alas dós today at 2 o'clock ngayóng hápon this afternoon ngayóng umága this morning ng mga anák of the children ng size ninyó your size noon then / before noong when / during noóng isáng linggó last week número number o kayá'y or/otherwise okey láng just all right o, sige all right oo, mabúti yes, good oo ngà I agree oo nga palá by the way ópò yes (formal) óras time pa still paálam goodbye paarkiláhan a place to hire pakainin to serve / feed pakéte parcel pakiabót sa akin please pass to me / hand pakilagáy please put/ place pakipára mo please stop at pakiúlit mo ngâ please repeat págbabakasyón vacationing pagbalík when you return pagháwak how to hold pagkáin food / eating pagkatápos afterwards / then pagháwak handling / holding paglabás ninyó once you've come out pagtanggáp reception págtataním planting

paikliín be shortened palagyán will ask to be put palarô games palawit bunting palígid around pálda skirt pangálan name pangalawáng order second order pang-shopping for shopping pag-akyát climbing pág-alalá concern pagkatápos afterwards pagkukúlang shortcomings paghaháin offering paglabás upon leaving páglalakbáv trip pagód tired pagsakáy riding pagsayáw dancing págsisilbi serving pagsungkit hooking with a pole pagtakbó running págtatae diarrhoea pala' so! pála spade palaisdaán fishpond palarúan playground paláyan rice field paléngke market páliguan bathroom (ang) palít exchange pálipáran airport pamangkín niece / nephew pamasáhe fare pamavpáv fan pambálot wrapping paper pamigáy to give around pamilyá family pamimilí shopping pamímilihin things to buy pamintá pepper pámpalamig refreshment pampasalúbong gifts panahón weather / time panaúhin guests pandalawáhan double pangálan name pang-aabála disturbance pang-isáhan single pang-okasyón for certain occasions pansit noodles (cooked the Filipino way) panyolíto handkerchiefs papalitán namin iyan we will replace it papáya pawpaw papuntá sa going to paputók fireworks pára so that / in order to paráda parade párang seems / like / as if pára kaníno for whom pára sa for pára sa akín for me pára sa ámin/ atin for us pára sa anák ko(ng) for my son pára sa áraw ng kasal ko for my wedding pára sa inyó for you pára sa sakít ng tiyán for stomach ache párke park párì priest pasalúbong gift pasahéro passenger pasapórte passport pasénsiya na accept our apologies páyong umbrella pechay pak choi péra/ pera ko money / my money péro but pinakabunsó youngest pinakakáin give food / feed pinakamalápit nearest pinagamásan had it cleaned pinaglútò asked to cook/cooked for pinapágod ka tiring you pinggán/plato plate pínya pineapple pirmahán lang (just) please sign pisára blackboard pistá(ng) feast day pistá(ng) bayan town fiesta pitákà wallet platíto saucer pósporo a box of matches probléma problem prútas fruit puhúnan capital pulá(ng) handbag red handbag pumíli pa choose some more pulútan finger food to go with drinks pulót-gatâ honeymoon pumíli po kayó please choose pumunta ká you go/ you visit/ stop by

púnong-káhoy fruit trees púpunta will go puwéde can puwéde akó I'm available puwéde ba(ng) is it possible / could you puwéde na will suffice/ that will do puwéde na pò bá is it all right, sir / ma'am? puwésto stalls raw/ daw apparently resíbo ninyó your receipt rekomendádo recommended regálo gift regálong ito this gift rénda reins repólyo cabbage reséta ng doktor doctor's prescription retratista photographer retráto picture réyna queen rin/din also/too/as well rosál gardenia sa (preposition) to / in / at/ on / at the / in the/ on the saán where (direction) saán akó pípirma where do I sign (ang) sa ákin (what is) mine sa áraw during the day sabáy na do it together / at the same time Sábado Saturday sa báryo at the barrio sa báhay at my place / at my home sabáw thin soup / stock sabshin tell/say sábong cockfight sabsában stable sabungán cockpit sa kanivá to him / her sáko sack sa kápitbáhay natin our neighbours' ságing banana sa halip na instead of sa inyó to you (singular formal / informal plural) sa invóng lahát to vou all sa isáng to one / against one sa isáng áraw the day after tomorrow sa isang linggó next week sa loób ng in(side) sa (loób ng) isang araw in one day salámat thank you sa lahát nang oras at anytime

sa lugár na ito here in this place salu-sálo party sa may near sampagúita the national flower sána I hope sandalì láng wait a minute sang-áyon agree sang-ávon sa according to sanggól baby sa palagay kó in my opinion sarisári(ng) assorted sariwa(ng) fresh sariwang lumpia fresh spring rolls sársa sauce/ dressing sasabíhin will tell sasakván vehicle sa súsunod next time sa tabí next/beside sa timbángan on the scales sa trabáho at work sa tuktók at the top sa umága in the morning sa únang béses for a first time sélvo stamp siksíkan crowded sige all right / OK / so long sige lang OK sigúro perhaps síli pepper (chilli or bell pepper) silíd-tulugán bedroom sílva chair simbáhan(g) church sinabúgan sprinkled with / showered with sinasábi lang iust say sinigáng na bangús stewed milkfish (with vinegar or tamarind and garlic) síno who sóbra siguro perhaps too much sóbre envelope sombréro hat sópas manók chicken soup sorbétes ice cream subáli't but súlat letter sumakáv ride sumáma to come / go with sumasáma (from masama, adi.) becomine worse sumayáw danced sumisikat shining sumúlat write

sumunód po kayó sa ákin please follow me sungávin charge with his horn susúlat will write street guide street guide táksi taxi tagá from (place of origin) tagapagdalá ng singsíng ring bearer tagapaglútò cook tahánan home tahímik quiet talagá really talóng eggplant / aubergine tálì string támà right / correct tandáng rooster tangháli midday tanghalían lunch táo pò anvone at home tápa sliced fried beef tapós afterwards / then tatlóng béses isáng áraw three times a day tátav father tátavô will stand téka just a moment / wait a minute telépono telephone tenvénte captain téna let's go térnong sáya a lady's long gown (of Spanish origin) tiket ticket tíket ninvó vour ticket tig/ tiga each tigatlóng píso three pesos each timbángan scales tinanggáp received tinanóng was asked tinápay bread tinatáwag calling tindáhan store tindáhan ng laruán toy store tindá(ng) damít clothes for sale tindéra/ tindéro vendor / sales assistant tingnán look tingnan ko ngå let me see / examine tingnan ninyó / mo you have a look tinulúngan helped títingnan ko let me see tiráhan residence / address tíva aunt

tiván ko my stomach totoó true tívo uncle tóvo sov sauce tradisyón(g) tradition tsá *tea* tséke cheque tsubíbo ferris wheel tsupér (boat) driver túbig water tugtúgin music tulóy as a result / as well tumátakbo running tumáwag call tumawid ka you cross tumígil stopped tumingín look tumugtóg played tumúlong helped tumútunóg making a sound tungkól sa about tutulúngan will help tuwáng-tuwâ happy tuwing Linggó every Sunday ubos ná ran out / consumed / finished ulán rain úlo nivá his / her head umakyát climb up umága morning umalís departed umarkilá ng bangkå to hire a boat uminóm to drink umiklî to become short umórder to order umórder pa távo let's order some more umulán rained úna first upang in order to / so that útang na loób debt of gratitude uulitin will repeat walâ no/none waláng asáwa not married / unmarried wala báng táwad any chance of a discount? wala póng anumán you're welcome várì sa made of yátà I think velo ice

#### All verbs in this glossary are in the root form unless otherwise indicated.

about tungkol sa accompanied isinama according to sang-ayon sa add magdagdag afternoon hapon afterwards/ then pagkatapos / tapos again/ once more muli agree sang-ayon agree. I oo nga airport paliparan alight/ get off baba all in all/ altogether lahat-lahat all right/ OK/ so long o, sige alone nag-iisa already na also saka; rin / din always lagi America America and at animal hayop anywhere kahit saan apparently daw/raw apritada apritada (a kind of main dish, fried) arm bisig around paligid arrive dating arrival dating as a result/ as well tulov ask (for something) hingi ask (a question) tanong assorted sarisari(ng) at nasa (prefix) at sa attractive kaakit-akit attach kabit aunt tiva (I'm) available puwede ako (newborn) baby sanggol

bachelor binata

bamboo kawayan

banana saging band banda baptism binyagan barrio baryo bathroom paliguan/banyo beautiful maganda because kasi/ dahil sa/ sapagka't bed kama bedroom silid-tulugan behind/ at the back likuran big malaki (quite) big malaki-laki bigger mas malaki bitter melon ampalava black itim blackboard pisara bland/ flat in taste matabang blouse blusa boat (canoe) bangka (to go) boating mamangka body katawan boiled rice kanin book aklat borrow hiram borrow money nangungutang bother abala (I) bought may binili ako(ng) box kahon bread tinapay breakfast almusal (to have) breakfast mag-almusal brother kapatid brother (older) kuva brother-in-law bayaw bucket balde buntal (Philippine fibre) buntal bunting palawit but pero/subali't buy bili (to) buy for ibili

cabbage repolvo call taway camera kamera can/ possible maaari/ puwede capital puhunan captain kapitan/tenvente car kotse cart karosa carved inukit Catholic katoliko chair silva chaos kaguluhan (to) change magpalit cheap mura cheque tseke chicken manok chicken soup sopas manok child bata/anak choose pili (to) choose from mapagpipilian church simbahan classmates kaklase clean malinis clever/ good at magaling/ marunong climb akyat climb up umakyat clothes damit cockfight sabong cockpit sabungan coconut, young murang niyog cold malamie colour kulay colourful makulay come on halikavo (to) come with/ go with sumama companion kasama concern pag-alaala consort abay consume ubos contest labanan / paligsahan cook luto cook (noun) tagapagluto corner kanto count bilang cross tawid crowded siksikan crown korona curtain kurtina custom kaugalian dance savaw dancing pagsayaw

darken dumidilim daughter anak day/ sun araw decoration dekorasyon (a) delicacy kutsinta/dila-dila delicious masaran depart alis departure alis destination punta diarrhoea pagtatae difficult/ poor mahirap dirty marumi disturbance pang-aabala/abala disappear mawala do gawa don't huwag double pandalawahan dozen dosena dressmaker modista (to) drink uminom drinking glass baso drinks inumin drive ligid (boat) driver tsuper during noon each tig/tiga early nang maaga earnestly lubusan(g) easily madali(ng) eat kain eggplant/ aubergine talong embarrassed nahihiya embarrassing nakakahiya embroidered burdado(ng) England Inglaterra (to) enjoy mag-enjoy enquire magtanong envelope sobre environment kapaligiran everybody lahat every day araw-araw exchange (ang) palit expensive mahal eyes mata family pamilya fan pamaypay far malayo fare pamasahe fast mabilis father tatay/ ama/ itay favourite paborito

feast day pista(ng) feed pinakakain female/ woman babae ferris wheel tsubibo fiesta pista fifteen labinlima (to) find humanap fine/pretty maganda (I'm) fine mabuti rin naman finger food to go with drinks pulutan finished/consumed naubos fireworks paputok first una fish isda fisherman mangingisda fishing nangingisda fish pond palaisdaan fixed/ arranged inavos flag bandera/bandila flood baha flower bulaklak food/ eating pagkain food preparation handa follow sunod for para sa forget kalimutan fragrant mabango frame kuwadro fresh sariwa(ng) friend kaibigan from buhat sal galing sa from (origin) taga fruit prutas fruit trees punong kahov games palaro

gardenia rosal gifts pasalubong/regalo (to) be given ibigay get/fetch kuha give bigay (to) give around pamigay go punta godchild inaanak godfather ninong godmother ninang going to papunta sa good mabuti good afternoon magandang hapon goodbye paalam good evening (formal) magandang gabi po good morning magandang umaga

gore suwagin grandchild apo grandfather lolo grandmother lola grass damo grilled inihaw guava bayabas guest/ visitor bisita/ panauhin guyabano (soursap) guyabano haircut gupit (to have a) haircut magpagupit hair buhok hand kamay hand over abot handkerchiefs panyolito happy maligaya(ng)/ masaya tuwang-tuwa has/ have may/ mayroon help tulong hat sombrero hen inahin her kaniya(ng) here dito here is heto hesitate mag-aatubili high mataas hire arkila (to) hire a boat umarkila ng bangka his/her niva hold hawak home bahay honeymoon pulot-gata hook with a pole sungkit (I) hope sana horse kabayo hot mainit hour oras house bahay how are you (formal singular) kumusta kayo how many/ a few ilan(g) how much magkano how much is it? magkano naman (informal plural) (to) hurry daliin hurting/painful masakit husband asawa ice cream sorbetes idea ideya if/ when kapag/ kung ilangilang ilangilang flower

immediately kaagad improve bumuti in nasa/sa (to) include isama including kasama in order to/ so that upang isn't it? hindi ba inside sa loob (ng) instead of sa halip na instead kundi invited imbitado/ kumbidado job gawain

kind mabait kinds uri kissing the hand nagmamano knife kutsilyo know alam

lanzones (fruit similar to lychees) lansones last night kagabi last week noong isang linggo later mamaya learn matuto leave alis left kaliwa letter sulat life buhay (I) like gusto ko like (comparison) katulad ng like that ganiyan/ ganoon living/residence nakatira long mahaba look after bahala look tingnan/tumingin looks/ appears/ seems mukhang loose maluwag/maluwang loosely nang maluwag lose malulugi love gusto lunch tanghalian lying down nakahiga made of yari sa (to) make gumawa man/ male lalaki mango mangga many/ plenty marami(ng)

many of karamihan map mapa margarine mantikilya market palengke married ikinasal

massage masahe matches posporo measurement sukat medicine gamot midday tanghali might/ cow baka milk gatas milkfish bangus money pera/kuwarta more higit/ mas lalo morning umaga mother nanay/inay/ina mouth bibig Mrs ginang music tugtugin must/should dapat my ko

name pangalan nane batok near malapit, sa may nearest pinakamalapit need kailangan neighbours kapitbahay nephew pamangkin new bago next/beside sa tabi next time sa susunod next week sa isang linggo nice masarap niece pamangkin night gabi no hindi no/ none wala noodles cooked in the Filipino way pansit noticed napansin now na/ngayon

number numero

(to) order umorder

of/ of the ng of course aba oo/ aba oo naman offering paghahain/pag-aalay officemates kaopisina officiating nagseseremonya often kadalasan on nasa/sa one isa only/just lang opened ibinuka opinion palagay or o kaya'y oranges dalanghita

other iba our namin

pak choi pechay parade parada parcel pakete parents magulang park parke party salu-salo pass abot

passenger pasahero passport pasaporte pawpaw papaya payment bayad (to) pay with ipambayad

peace katahimikan pen bolpen pencil lapis pepper paminta/ sili

perhaps siguro petrol gasolina

photograph/ picture larawan photographer retratista

picture retrato
pineapple pinya
place lugar
planting pagtanim
plants halaman

(a) plate of isang plato (ng) plate plato/pinggan

play laro

playground palaruan

pleased to meet you (formal) ikinagagalak

ko kayong makilala pleased nasiyahan (to) post ihulog prawns hipon prepare handa prepared food naghan prescriptions reseta

prepared food naghanda prescriptions reseta pretty maganda price halaga prices pari problem problema put lagay

queen reyna quiet tahimik

rain ulan
reach abot
read basa
really talaga
reception handaan

receipt resibo receive tanggap recommend rekomenda

refreshment pampalamig reins renda

reins renda repeat ulit replace palitan

residence/ address tirahan

return balik rice cakes kakanin rice field palayan rich mayaman rid sakay ride sumakay right (direction) kanan

right/ correct tama

ring bearer tagapagdala ng singsing

ripe hinog

road/ way/ path daan

room kuwarto/ quarter/ one fourth

rooster tandang rubbish basura run takbo

sack sako salt asin Saturday Sabado sauce/ dressing sarsa saucer platito

sauteed vegetable ginisang gulay (the) savings inimpok/inipon saving money nag-iipon ng pera

say sabi scales timbangan

(a) scarf ng bandana sea dagat

see kita seems like/ as if parang sell tinda

(to) serve/ feed pakainin

serving pagsisilbi shame mahiya/hiya shine sikat

ship barko shopping pamimili short maikli

shortcomings pagkukulang (to) shorten paikliin / umikli single pang-isahan

sister (older) ate sister kapatid sister-in-law hipag sit down upo size sukat skirt palda

sky langit/ himpapawid

sleep tulog slightly medyo small maliit smelly mabaho smile ngiti

so pala sometimes kung minsan

son anak

so that/ in order to para

soy sauce toyo spade pala spend gastos spouse asawa spring rolls lumpia sprinkle with sabog squash kalabasa

squid adobo adobong pusit

stable sabsaban stalls puwesto stamp selyo stand tayo standing nakatayo

stewed milkfish (with vinegar or tamarind

and garlic) sinigang na bangus

still pa stomach tiyan

stomach ache sakit ng tiyan stop para / tigil / hinto store tindahan straight diretso/ tuwid street kalye/ kalsada/ road

street guide street guide stretch banat string tali

(to take a) stroll mamasyal

student estudyante study nag-aaral suckling pig litson suddenly bigla

suffice/ that will do puwede na

suit bagay suitcase maleta Sunday Linggo surprised nagulat swallow inom/lunok (to) swim lumangoy

table mesa take kuha (to) take from kunan talk to kausapin taxi taksi tea tsaa teacher guro telephone telepono

tell sabi

terno (a long gown of Spanish origin)

ternong saya than kaysa/kaysa sa thank you salamat

thank you very much maraming salamat

that iyan

that (over there) iyon

that's all (just those) iyan lang

that's why kaya the ang

then/before noon

there doon

there is/ there are may/mayroon

throw tapon these ang mga ito thick makapal thing bagay think mag-isip (1) think yata this ito/nito those ang mga iyan

ticket tiket time oras tired pagod

tire oneself, to magpagod

to sa

today ngayong toilet kubeta tomatoes kamatis tomorrow bukas tongue dila

tonight mamayang gabi town kabayanan

toy laruan(g)

toy store tindahan ng laruan

tradition tradisyon(g)
travel biyahe
trip paglalakbay
true totoo
try isukat
two dalawa
typhoon bagyo

umbrella payong uncle tiyo

understand naiintindihan

unmarried walang asawa until hanggang sa vacancy bakante vacation bakasvon vegetables gulay vehicle sasakyan vendor/ sales assistant tinderal tindero very/ too/ quite/ extremely masyado(ng) village baryo visit/ stop by punta walk/ move, to lumakad (to) walk straight ahead dumiretso wallet pitaka want gusto / nais wash hugas (to) watch manood water tubig water/liquid sabaw water buffalo kalabaw we tayo/kami weather panahon wedding kasal/ kasalan wedding assistant(s) (mga) abay sa kasal wedding dress damit pangkasal week linggo welcome maligayang pagdating (you're) welcome wala pong anuman / ano(ng) what ano (ng), anu-ano (formal) what time anong oras when kailan when/during noong

where (location) nasaan

where (direction) saan which alin while habang whispering bumubulong who sino whole buo whose kanino why bakit/ kung bakit wife asawa. window bintana windy humangin with kasama wooden kahoy (to) win manalo wonder taka work trabaho (to) worry mag-alala/ mag-isip worsen sumasama woven nilala(ng) wrapped nakabalot wrapping paper pambalot write sulat year taon yellow dilaw yes (formal) opo yesterday kahapon yet pa you (singular) ka you (plural informal/ formal singular) kayo youngest pinakabunso your ninyo/inyong

